Thank you very much for choosing this vehicle.

In order to correctly operate and maintain your vehicle, please take the time to read this manual carefully.

After reading, please leave the manual in the vehicle for future reference. Please leave this manual in the vehicle at the same time of resale, as the new owner will also need to read the information in it.

All the information and specifications in this manual are current at the time of printing.

Remember that authorized service station knows your vehicle best and has factory-trained technicians and OEM parts to guarantee your safety. Do not use non-OEM parts or accessories to modify your vehicle. Modifying will affect the functionality, safety and durability of your vehicle.

According to the specification of equipment and features of your vehicle, some descriptions and illustrations may differ from that on your vehicle.

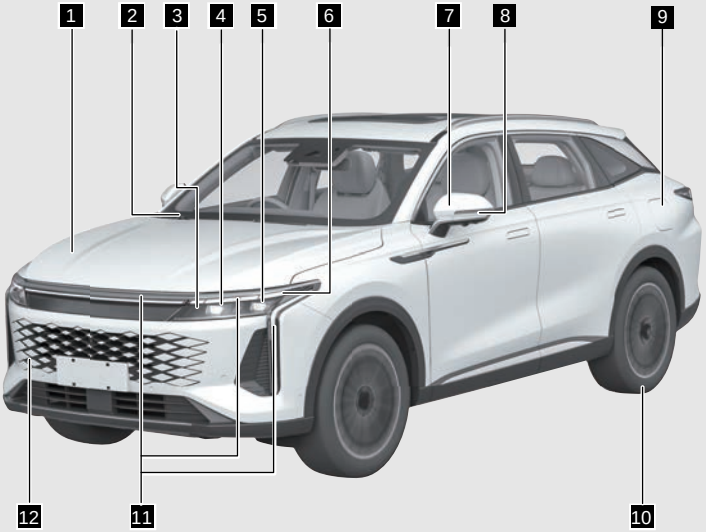
Any data, descriptions and illustrations provided in this manual cannot be used as the basis for any insurance claim.

We reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications at any time without notice.

All rights reserved. This document should not be reproduced or copied, in whole or inpart, without the written permission.

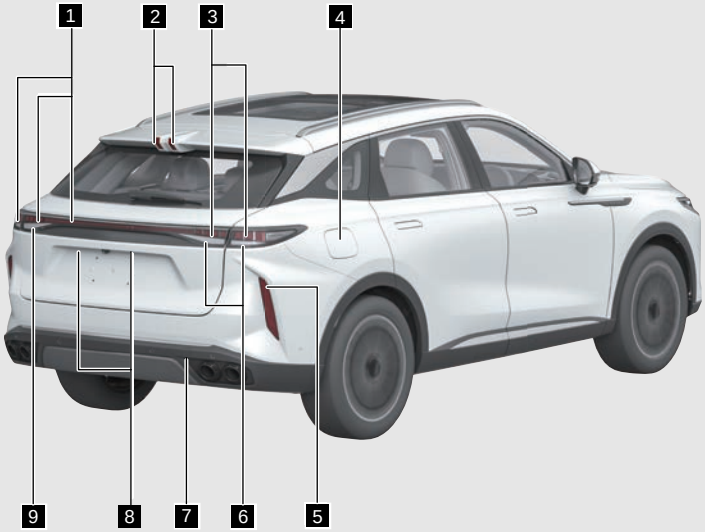
Happy driving!

Version No.: M38TPHEVRHDOM25EN02
Issued March 2025



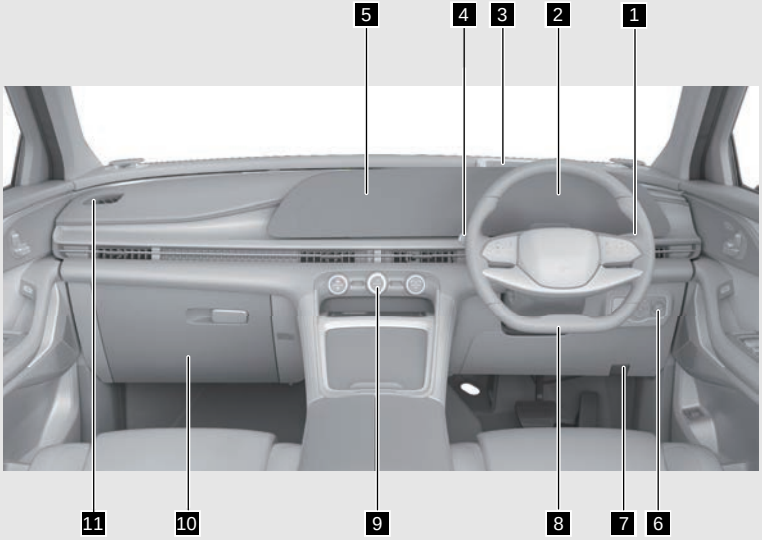
1 Front Compartment Cover..... P.136
2 Wiper Blade..... P.43
3 Cornering Light (If Equipped)..... P.47
4 High Beam Light..... P.44
5 Low Beam Light..... P.44
6 Turn Signal Light..... P.46
7 Outside Rear View Mirror..... P.37
8 Side Turn Signal Light..... P.46
9 Charging Port Cover..... P.239
10 Tire..... P.287
11 Position Light..... P.44
12 Installation Position of Front Towing Eyelet..... P.268

Note: Please refer to the actual vehicle.



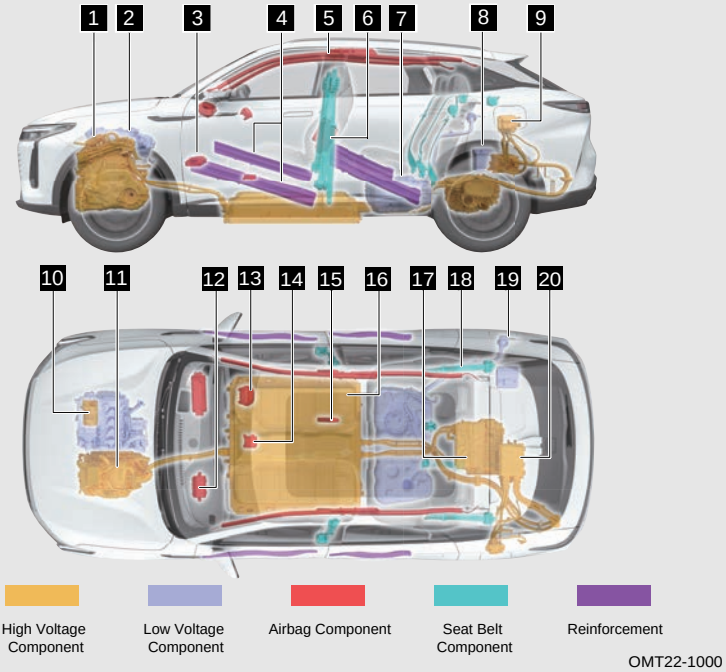
1 Position Light P.44
2 High Mounted Brake Light..... P.47
3 Brake Light P.47
4 Fuel Filler Door..... P.141
5 Rear Fog Light P.46
6 Turn Signal Light P.46
7 Installation Position of Rear Towing Eyelet P.268
8 License Plate Light P.47
9 Back-up Light..... P.47

Note: Please refer to the actual vehicle.



1 Combination Switch P.41
2 Instrument Cluster P.26
3 Head Up Display (If Equipped)..... P.189
4 Column Shift..... P.147
5 Head Unit..... P.95
6 Fuel Filler Door Switch P.141
Headlight Combination Switch..... P.44
Outside Rear View Mirror Adjustment Switch P.37
7 Front Compartment Cover Release Lever P.136
8 Steering Wheel P.36
9 Air Conditioning Control Panel..... P.105
10 Glove Box (If Equipped)..... P.133
11 Front Passenger Airbag..... P.161

Note: The interiors are different depending to the market requirement. Please refer to the actual vehicle.



OMT22-1000

1 High Voltage Electric Heater
2 Engine Assembly
3 Driver Knee Airbag (If Equipped)
4 Door Anti-collision Panel
5 Curtain Side Airbag
6 Front Seat Belt
7 Fuel Tank
8 12 V Battery
9 Charging Port
10 Electric Compressor Assembly
11 Hybrid Transmission Assembly
12 Front Passenger Airbag
13 Driver Airbag
14 Airbag Module
15 Front Seat Center Airbag (If Equipped)
16 Power Battery
17 Rear Drive Motor (If Equipped)
18 Rear Seat Belt
19 Fuel Filler
20 On-board Charger Assembly

Note: Please refer to the actual vehicle.

1. INTRODUCTION

1-1. How to Read This Manual

How to Read This Manual....2
Table of Contents 2
Pictorial Index 2
Index 2

1-2. Symbols in the Manual

Symbols in the Manual 3

1-3. New Vehicle Inspection

User Registration Certificate.....4
Delivery Card.....5

1-4. "Face to face" Advisory Service Card

"Face to face" Advisory Service Card.....7

1-5. New Vehicle Inspection

New Vehicle Inspection 11
Delivery Inspection Certificate..... 11

1-6. New Vehicle Break-in

New Vehicle Break-in..... 12

1-7. How to Save Fuel and Extend Life of Vehicle

How to Save Fuel and Extend Life of Vehicle..... 13

1-8. Precautions Before Driving Vehicle

Safety Check 14
Before Starting Engine 14
After Starting Engine..... 15
When Driving..... 15
Parking Operations..... 15
Parking on Slope..... 16
Exhaust System Inspection 17

1-9. Off-road Driving Precautions

Off-road Driving..... 18

1-10. Precautions When Driving in Rainy Condition

When Driving on Slippery Road Surfaces..... 19
Driving Through Water 19

1-11. Winter Driving Precautions

Winter Driving Tips 20
Driving on Road Covered with Ice and Snow..... 21
Tire Chains..... 21

1-12. Cybersecurity Notice

Cybersecurity Support Service Update or Termination Notice..... 23
Cybersecurity Notice for Scrapping or Resale 23

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

2-1. Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster View 26
Driving Information 27

2-2. Operation/Malfunction Indicator

Operation/Malfunction Indicator..... 28

2-3. Steering Wheel

Horn..... 36
Adjusting Steering Wheel..... 36

2-4. Rear View Mirror

Inside Rear View Mirror 37
Outside Rear View Mirror..... 37

2-5. Wiper and Washer System

Wiper and Washer Operation 41

2-6. Vehicle Light

External Lighting 44
Internal Lighting 48
Fogging Instructions for Light 49

2-7. Seat

Front Seat 50
Rear Seat 55
Adjusting Head Restraint 56
Audio Headrest (If Equipped) 56

2-8. Seat Belt

Seat Belt Pretensioner 61

2-9. Child Restraint Systems

Child Restraint Systems 64
Top Tether 66
Installing Child Restraint Systems 68
Enabling and Disabling Front Passenger Airbag (If Equipped) 70
Child Presence Detection (If Equipped) 71

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

3-1. Smart Key

Mechanical Key 75
Replacing Smart Key Battery 76
Keyless Entry 77
Remote Starting for Smart Key 81

3-2. Immobilizer System

Vehicle Arming 82

3-3. Door Locks

Door Lock Switch 84

3-4. Windows

Power Windows 86
Remote Control Window Function 88
Window Jam Protection Function 89

3-5. Panoramic Moon Roof

3-6. OTA Upgrade (If Equipped)

OTA Upgrade 92

3-7. Head Unit System

Head Unit View 95
Head Unit Control Button 96
Voice Recognition Function 97
Vehicle Setting 97
Phone-link 101

3-8. Automatic Air Conditioning System

Automatic Air Conditioning System 105
A/C Setting 110
Air Conditioning Heating Operation 110
Air Conditioning Cooling Operation 111
Air Outlets Airflow Control 113

3-9. Fragrance System (If Equipped)

Fragrance System 114

3-10. Wireless Charging

3-11. Remote Control System (If Equipped)

Remote Control System 118
Introduction of product functions 119

3-12. Power Outlet and USB

3-13. Cup Holders

3-14. Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors

3-15. Assist Grips

Passenger Assist Grips ... 132
Rear Center Armrest..... 133

3-16. Storage Space

Door Storage Boxes 133
Glove Box (If Equipped) 133
Auxiliary Fascia Console Storage Box 134
Seat Storage Bag 134
Luggage Compartment ... 135

3-17. Front Compartment Cover

3-18. Power Back Door

3-19. Fuel Filler Door

4. DRIVING VEHICLE

4-1. Starting Vehicle

Before Starting Vehicle.... 144
Vehicle Power-on 144
Vehicle Power-off 146
Engine Self-maintenance..... 147

4-2. Automatic Transmission

Automatic Transmission 147

4-3. Intelligent Timely All-wheel-drive System

Intelligent Timely All-wheel-drive System 149
Driving Mode 150

4-4. Electric Power Steering (EPS) System

4-5. Brake System

Electric Parking Brake (EPB) System 156
Auto Hold 158
Foot Brake 159
Brake System Operation Descriptions.... 160

4-6. Airbag

Airbag..... 161
Proper Usage and Precautions for Airbag..... 162

5. DRIVING ASSIST

5-1. Speed Limit Assist System

5-2. Cruise System

Adaptive Cruise Control System (ACC)..... 172
Active Speed Limit..... 177
Situations Unsuitable for Cruise Control..... 178
Intelligent Speed Control System (If Equipped) 178

5-3. Hill Descent Control (HDC) System

5-4. Lane Assist System

Lane Departure Warning (LDW) System 180
Lane Departure Prevention (LDP) System 181

Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) System 183

5-5. Blind Spot Detection System

Blind Spot Detection (BSD) / Lane Change Assist (LCA) System 185
Rear Traffic Crossing Anti-collision (RCTA) System 186
Door Open Warning (DOW) System..... 186
Rear Collision Warning (RCW) System..... 188

5-6. Head Up Display (HUD) System

5-7. Automatic Emergency Braking System (AEB) and Front Collision Warning System (FCW)

Automatic Emergency Braking System (AEB) and Front Collision Warning System (FCW) 190

5-8. Intelligent Cruise Control System

Traffic Jam Assist (TJA) System and Integrated Cruise Assist (ICA) System 193

5-9. Drive Away Information System

Drive Away Information System (DAI)..... 195

5-10. Intelligent High Beam Assist System (HMA)

5-11. Driving Recorder (DVR)

5-12. Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)..... 201

5-13. Driver Monitoring System (DMS)

Driver Monitoring System (DMS) 204

5-14. Parking Radar System

Parking Radar System 205
Auto Parking Function 207

5-15. Panoramic View Monitor System

Camera Layout 212
Usage of Panoramic View Monitor..... 213
Switching Panoramic View Monitor System View..... 214
Setting Panoramic View Monitor System..... 216

5-16. Braking Force Control System

Integrated Braking Force Control System 217
Electronic Stability Program System (ESP)... 217
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 219
Precautions for Operation..... 220

5-17. Intelligent Electronic Control Suspension

5-18. Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicle System (PHEV)

Power Battery 223
New Energy Settings 225
Energy Recovery Intensity 230
Operating Mode 231
Charging Device 235
Charging Operation 238
AC charging socket electronic lock 243
Releasing Charging Gun Manually (Only for AC Charging) 244
Charging Precautions 245
External Discharging 246
Low-speed Pedestrian Warning Sound 249

6. IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

6-1. Emergency Call Function

ECALL (If Equipped) 252

6-2. Handling Vehicle in Emergency

Hazard Light 252
Reflective Vest 253
Warning Triangle 253
Spare Tools 254

6-3. If You Have a Flat Tire When Driving

Repairing Tire in Emergency 254

6-4. If Your Vehicle Overheats

6-5. Replacing Fuse

Fuse 258
Fuse and Relay Box Layout 259
Checking Fuse 260
Replacing Fuse 260

6-6. Vehicle Towing

Towing (If Equipped) 261
Weight Limit 262
Towing Hook 263
Safety Chain 264
Towing Light 265
Tow truck Brake 265
Impact on Mileage 265
Towing Hint 265
Towing Vehicle 266
Installing Towing Eyelet ... 268

6-7. If Battery is Depleted

Removing Battery 269
Jump-starting 270

6-8. Door Mechanical Switch

Mechanical Switch 272

6-9. Back Door Emergency Opening

7. MAINTENANCE

7-1. Repair and Maintenance

Repair and Maintenance 276
Authorized Service Station is at Your Service 276
Reading Vehicle Identification Code Information 277
Safety Check 277

7-2. Normal Maintenance

Normal Maintenance 278
Power Battery 279
Checking Oil Level 282
Checking Transmission Fluid Level 284

Checking Brake Fluid Level 284
Checking Coolant Level 285
Checking Radiator and Condenser 285
Checking Tire Inflation Pressure 286
Checking Tires 287
Tire Rotation 288
Checking Battery 288
Adding Windshield Washer Fluid 289
Checking Wiper Blade 289
Checking and Replacing Air Conditioning Filter 290

7-3. Regular Maintenance

First Maintenance Information 291
Maintenance Schedule 292
Technical Data 300

8. SPECIFICATION

8-1. Label Location

8-2. Vehicle Specifications

Vehicle Dimensions 306
Vehicle Type 307
Vehicle Weight 307
Vehicle Performance 308
Engine Performance 308
Drive Motor 309
Fuel System 310
Suspension System 311
Power Battery 311
Battery 311
Wheel Alignment 312
Wheels and Tires 312
Light Bulb Specification ... 313
Vehicle Components That Are Not Included in the Vehicle Size 313

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

INTRODUCTION

1-1. How to Read This Manual

How to Read This Manual 2

Table of Contents 2

Pictorial Index.....2

Index.....2

1-2. Symbols in the Manual

Symbols in the Manual.....3

1-3. New Vehicle Inspection

User Registration Certificate 4

Delivery Card 5

1-4. "Face to face" Advisory Service Card

"Face to face" Advisory Service Card 7

1-5. New Vehicle Inspection

New Vehicle Inspection 11

Delivery Inspection Certificate 11

1-6. New Vehicle Break-in

New Vehicle Break-in..... 12

1-7. How to Save Fuel and Extend Life of Vehicle

How to Save Fuel and Extend Life of Vehicle 13

1-8. Precautions Before Driving Vehicle

Safety Check..... 14

Before Starting Engine..... 14

After Starting Engine..... 15

When Driving..... 15

Parking Operations..... 15

Parking on Slope..... 16

Exhaust System Inspection 17

1-9. Off-road Driving Precautions

Off-road Driving 18

1-10. Precautions When Driving in Rainy Condition

When Driving on Slippery Road Surfaces..... 19

Driving Through Water 19

1-11. Winter Driving Precautions

Winter Driving Tips 20

Driving on Road Covered with Ice and Snow 21

Tire Chains..... 21

1-12. Cybersecurity Notice

Cybersecurity Support Service Update or Termination Notice 23

Cybersecurity Notice for Scrapping or Resale 23

1-1. How to Read This Manual

How to Read This Manual

There are three ways for you to find the information you need in this manual. Here is a brief introduction of each one.

Table of Contents

The main Table of Contents will tell you which chapter of the Owner's Manual contains the information you need and what page to find it on.

Pictorial Index

The Pictorial Index is a helpful tool to find the required information quickly, especially if you are not familiar with the component name.

Index

This is the fastest method for you to find the information you need. The index contains a complete listing of all the important vehicle terminologies.

1-2. Symbols in the Manual

Symbols in the Manual

The following symbols are used in this manual to draw your attention to particularly important information. In order to minimize the risks as much as possible, please read the instructions on these symbols carefully before driving, and make sure to follow them.

WARNING
Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in damage to your vehicle, personal injury or even death.

CAUTION
Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in damage to your vehicle and its equipment, reducing the vehicle's life span.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION
Indicates that waste must be handled or disposed of according to local environmental regulations to avoid any contamination.

READ
Indicates that the relevant chapter in this manual must be read before any operation.

WARNING and CAUTION relating to personal safety and vehicle safety in this manual are very important. Make sure everyone in the vehicle follows these instructions carefully in order to both enjoy your driving experience and to keep your vehicle in optimum condition.

1-3. New Vehicle Inspection

Prior to your purchase, authorized service station has inspected your vehicle according to the regulations. The service station will record the delivery date and affix its official seal to the User Registration Certificate. Before you sign the User Registration Certificate, the authorized dealer will provide you with instructions regarding your vehicle's overall performance and some basic knowledge about its features and regular operation according to the Vehicle Delivery Card.

User Registration Certificate

Model Code	
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)	
Engine Number or Transmission Number	
Vehicle Registration Number	
Seal of Dealer:	
Signature of Dealer:	
Delivery Date	
User	
Address	
E-mail	
Telephone	
Have provided and explained the following items for me: • VEHICLE • OWNER'S MANUAL • PRE-DELIVERY INSPECTION	
Signature of User:	
Signature of Dealer:	

Delivery Card

Category	No.	Items	Whether Pass Inspection and Explain Clearly	
Vehicle Performan-ce	1	Engine	YES ☐	NO ☐
	2	Engine oil, brake fluid, power steering fluid (if equipped), coolant, windshield washer fluid	YES ☐	NO ☐
	3	VIN code, engine number and nameplate etc.	YES ☐	NO ☐
	4	Whole set of vehicle keys	YES ☐	NO ☐
	5	All lights of vehicle	YES ☐	NO ☐
	6	Windshield and painted surfaces	YES ☐	NO ☐
	7	Speedometer, tachometer and instrument cluster LCD display	YES ☐	NO ☐
	8	Tires, spare tires, spare tools and Owner's Manual	YES ☐	NO ☐
	9	Seats, seat belts, A/C switches and outlets, glove box and sun visors	YES ☐	NO ☐
	10	Windows, rear view mirrors, windshield wipers, windshield washers, battery, reversing radar system, horns, moon roof (if equipped), audio device and antenna	YES ☐	NO ☐

Category	No.	Items	Whether Pass Inspection and Explain Clearly	
Basic Knowledge About Operation	1*	Unleaded gasoline with an octane number of 91 or higher	YES ☐	NO ☐
		Unleaded gasoline with an octane number of 92 or higher	YES ☐	NO ☐
		Unleaded gasoline with an octane number of 95 or higher	YES ☐	NO ☐
		E22-E100	YES ☐	NO ☐
	2	Normal operation during the break-in period	YES ☐	NO ☐
	3	Operation of all the vehicle lights	YES ☐	NO ☐
	4	Understanding warning lights and indicator lights	YES ☐	NO ☐
	5	Correct time/mileage of the maintenance schedule	YES ☐	NO ☐
	6	Vehicle maintenance in winter/summer	YES ☐	NO ☐
	7	Thorough understanding of the cooling system and normal usage of the coolant	YES ☐	NO ☐
	8	Correct operation of air conditioning	YES ☐	NO ☐
	9	Precautions during starting the vehicle	YES ☐	NO ☐
	10	Correct operation of audio system	YES ☐	NO ☐
	11	Correct usage of moon roof (if equipped)	YES ☐	NO ☐
Signature of Sales Clerk: Date:				
Signature of User: Date:				

*: Please use the fuel recommended by authorized dealers.

1-4. "Face to face" Advisory Service Card

"Face to face" Advisory Service Card

authorized service station will provide a dedicated service advisor when you purchase your vehicle. If you have any questions concerning your vehicle, please consult the dealership.

Sheet one (for user)

Name of User:	Date of Purchase:
Sales & Servicing Department:	Model:
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN):	
The following items should be confirmed by the user:	
1. Vehicle Delivery and Inspection (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
☐	Have introduced the basic operation of the vehicle to the user and performed the delivery inspection.
☐	Have explained the warranty policies to the user.
☐	Have explained the precautions of driving to the user.
☐	Have explained the importance of regular maintenance and the recommended interval time/mileage for regular maintenance to the user.
☐	Have explained the importance of having regular maintenance/vehicle repair performed at authorized service station to the user.
☐	Have delivered the Owner's Manual to the users and reminded them to read it.
☐	Have informed the service hotline function and how to use it.
2. "Face to face" Advisory Service Mode Introduction (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
☐	If you have questions or concerns, please contact a service advisor.
☐	The service advisor is the only person authorized by the dealer to answer the user's questions.
☐	Have assigned a dedicated service advisor to each user for "Person to- Person" service.
☐	If the user is not fully satisfied with the service advisor, the user can select another service advisor.
The following items should be confirmed by the user:	
3. Main Work Introduction on Service advisor (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	

☐	Service reception during service and maintenance.
☐	Regular maintenance reminders.
☐	Answer the service/maintenance consultation.
☐	Service/maintenance booking.
☐	Annual inspection reminders/acceptance.
☐	Regular check up and service reminders and holiday greetings.
☐	Other concerns from the user.
4. "Face to face" Advisory Service Relationship Establishment:	
Service advisor business card	
Signature of User/Date:	
Signature of Service Advisor/Date:	

Sheet two (for sales & servicing department)

Name of User:	Date of Purchase:
Sales & Servicing Department:	Model:
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN):	
The following items should be confirmed by the user:	
1. Vehicle Delivery and Inspection (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
☐	Have introduced the basic operation of the vehicle to the user and performed the delivery inspection.
☐	Have explained the warranty policies to the user.
☐	Have explained the precautions of driving to the user.
☐	Have explained the importance of regular maintenance and the recommended interval time/mileage for regular maintenance to the user.
☐	Have explained to the user the importance of having regular maintenance or vehicle repairs done at authorized service station.
☐	Have delivered the Owner's Manual to the users and reminded them to read it.
☐	Have informed the user about the service hotline function and how to use it.
2. "Face to face" Advisory Service Mode Introduction (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
☐	If you have any questions or concerns, ask your service advisor.
☐	The service advisor is the only person authorized by the dealer to answer the user's questions.
☐	Have assigned a dedicated service advisor to each user for "face to face" service.
☐	If the user is not fully satisfied with the service advisor, the user can request another service advisor.
The following items should be confirmed by the user:	
3. Main Work Introduction on Service Advisor (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
☐	Service reception during service and maintenance.
☐	Regular maintenance reminders.
☐	Answer the service/maintenance consultation.
☐	Service/maintenance appointment.

☐	Annual inspection reminders.
☐	Regular check up and service reminders and holiday greetings.
☐	Other concerns from the user.
4. "Face to face" Advisory Service Relationship Establishment:	
Service advisor business card	
Signature of User/Date:	
Signature of Service Advisor/Date:	

1-5. New Vehicle Inspection

New Vehicle Inspection

Before delivering the vehicle to you, the Sales & Servicing department of your dealership has inspected it according to regulations. The Sales & Servicing department of Auto should fill the delivery date in the inspection certificate and affix the official seal of dealer unit.

Dealer unit will verify the vehicle to you in accordance with "Delivery Card", and introduce the knowledge of using the vehicle, which will be signed by salesman and user.

Delivery Inspection Certificate

In witness whereof, this vehicle has passed delivery inspection as regulated. and quality meets technical specification.

Vehicle Model	
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)	
Engine Number or Transmission Number	
Vehicle Registration Number	
Official Seal of Sales & Servicing Department:	
Signature of Sales & Servicing Department:	
Delivery Date	
User	
Address	
E-mail	
Telephone	
Have provided and explained the following items for me: • VEHICLE • OWNER'S MANUAL • PRE-DELIVERY INSPECTION	
Signature of User:	
Signature of Sales & Servicing Department:	

1-6. New Vehicle Break-in

New Vehicle Break-in

Frictional resistance between the moving parts of a new vehicle is much more likely in the initial use of the vehicle than later on. Therefore, the initial use can have a greater impact on the vehicle's lifespan, operational reliability and economy. We advise that the use of a new vehicle must strictly follow the following guidelines and that the break-in period would be on average the first 3000 km driven.

■ Driving regulations of new vehicle break-in period

Within the first 1,000 km:

- Avoid driving at full speed;
- Driving speed should not exceed 100 km/h;
- Avoid driving at maximum speed in each gear.

Within the first 1,000 - 1,500 km:

- Driving speed can be gradually increased to the highest speed;
- Engine speed can be gradually increased to the maximum allowable speed.

■ Driving recommendations after break-in period

- When driving a vehicle, the maximum speed which engine allows to run in short time is 6,000 r/min. When shifting manually, shift to nearby high gear while the tachometer pointer reaches the red indicator zone.
- Engine speed should not be too low while driving, so it will be necessary to shift to the appropriate gear. Do not run the engine at maximum speed in neutral or other gears if the engine is cold.

■ Tire and wheel break-in recommendations:

When starting to use new tires, the best adhesion is not available. Therefore, new tires also need break-in, so the vehicle should be driven slowly and especially carefully within the first 100 km of driving.

■ Braking system break-in recommendations:

New brake lining also needs break-in. Because the brakes cannot provide the ideal brake friction during the first 200 km. If the braking efficiency is slightly worse at this stage, increase depression force on the pedal appropriately. This condition also applies to the each replacement of braking lining later.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION
Avoid running engine at unnecessary high speed. Switching to a high gear in time is helpful to save fuel, reduce operation noise and reduce environmental pollution.

1-7. How to Save Fuel and Extend Life of Vehicle

How to Save Fuel and Extend Life of Vehicle

Saving fuel is largely determined by vehicle conditions and driving habit. Do not overuse the vehicle, which also helps to extend vehicle's life.

The followings are specific tips for fuel saving:

1. Make sure to maintain proper tire inflation pressure. Insufficient tire inflation pressure will lead to tire wear and fuel wastage.
2. The vehicle should not be loaded with unnecessary weight. Heavy loads increase the engine load, resulting in high fuel consumption.
3. Avoid warm-up idling for a long time. The vehicle can be driven once the engine runs smoothly. The warm-up time in cold weather will be longer than other seasons.
4. Accelerate slowly and smoothly. Avoid sudden starting.
5. Avoid engine idling for a long time. If you need to park vehicle and wait for a long time, you should turn off the engine and turn it on again later.
6. Avoid out-of-gear or overspeed of engine. Select proper gears according to driving road conditions.
7. Avoid continuous acceleration and deceleration. Stop-and-go driving will waste the fuel.
8. Avoid unnecessary stopping and braking. You should keep a stable speed. Obey the traffic light's instructions while driving and minimize the number of stops, or take full advantage of road without traffic lights to drive vehicle. Maintain a proper driving distance with other vehicles to avoid sudden braking, this will also reduce brake wear.
9. Avoid areas with heavy traffic or traffic jams as much as possible.
10. Do not hold your foot on clutch or brake pedals for a long time. This will cause premature wear, overheating and high fuel consumption.
11. Keep a proper vehicle speed on the motorway. The faster the vehicle's speed, the more fuel consumption. Decreasing vehicle speed will save fuel.
12. Keep proper front wheel alignment. Avoid collision with road curbs and reduce your vehicle speed when driving on rough road surfaces. Improper front wheel alignment will not only quicken tire wear, but also increase engine load.
13. Avoid contacting vehicle chassis with mud, etc.
14. Maintain vehicle in optimal working condition. Dirty air filter, improper valve clearance, dirty spark plugs, dirty oil and grease, brakes without proper adjustment, etc. can reduce engine performance and waste fuel. Regular maintenance will extend your vehicle's life and reduce your driving costs. Your vehicle needs to be serviced more frequently if you regularly drive in severe conditions.

> ⚠ CAUTION
>
> Never turn off engine when driving downhill. The power steering system and brake system will not operate normally when engine is not running.

1-8. Precautions Before Driving Vehicle

Safety Check

It is better to do a safety check before driving vehicle. A few minutes of checking can help ensure safe and pleasant driving.

> ⚠ WARNING
>
> If you perform this check in an enclosed garage, make sure there is adequate ventilation.

Before Starting Engine

■ Outside vehicle

1. Tires (including spare tire): Check tire pressure with a tire pressure gauge and carefully check tires for cuts, damage or excessive wear.
2. Wheel bolts: Make sure no wheel bolts are missing or loose.
3. Fluid leaks: After the vehicle has been parked for a while, check underneath for leaking fuel, oil, coolant or other fluids (Water dripping from air conditioning after use is normal).
4. Lights: Make sure the headlights, daytime running lights, brake lights, fog lights, turn signal lights and other lights are working properly.
5. Intake grilles: Remove snow, leaves or other obstructions from the intake grilles in front of windshield.

■ Inside vehicle

1. Spare tools: Make sure you have spare tools, such as jack, wheel bolt wrench and spare tire.
2. Seat belts: Check if the buckles can be fastened securely. Make sure belts are not worn or frayed.
3. Instrument cluster and controls: Make especially sure the malfunction indicator lights, indicator lights, and controls are working properly.
4. Brakes: Make sure the pedal has enough clearance.

■ Engine compartment and engine

1. Spare fuses: Make sure spare fuses are available. All the fuses with amperage ratings designated on the fuse box cover should be provided.
2. Coolant level: Make sure coolant level is proper.

3. Battery and cables: Check for corroded or loose terminals and a cracked case. Check the cables for good condition and connections.
4. Wiring: Check for damaged, loose or broken wires.
5. Fuel lines: Check the lines for leaks or loose connections.

■ Hood

Make sure the hood is locked completely before driving. Otherwise, the hood may tilt up and block front view when vehicle is moving, which could lead to an accident.

After Starting Engine

1. Exhaust system: Listen for any leakage. Repair any leaks immediately if such condition occurs.
2. Engine oil level: Stop vehicle on level ground, turn off engine and wait for 5 minutes, pull out the dipstick to check if the engine oil level is proper.

When Driving

1. Gauges and meters: Make sure the gauges and meters are working properly.
2. Brakes: At a safe place, check that the vehicle does not pull to one side when the brakes are applied.
3. Other abnormal conditions: Check for loose parts and leaks. Listen for abnormal noises.

Parking Operations

Proper parking is an important part of safe driving. Vehicle should be parked in a place with wide road, good view and no impact on traffic. Parking operation steps are as follows:

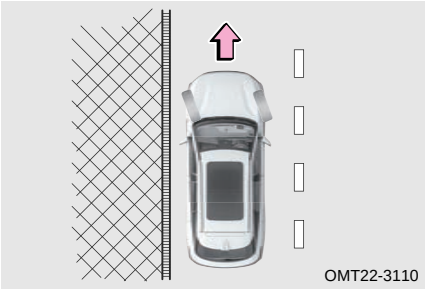
1. Depress brake pedal until the vehicle is completely stopped.
2. Confirm that the electronic parking is enabled.
3. Move shift lever to "P" position.
4. Vehicle power is switched to OFF mode.

⚠ CAUTION
When you leave vehicle, make sure to lock your vehicle and carry the keys with you.

Parking on Slope

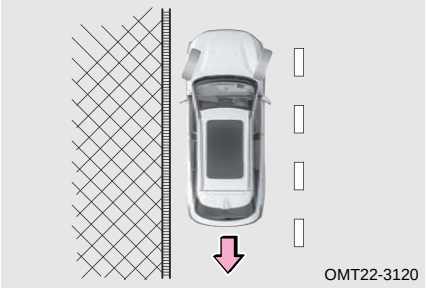
Parking vehicle on a slope is mainly enabled by the force of the parking brake. Failing to apply park brake or any brake malfunction may cause the vehicle to slide down a slope and personal injury or damage to vehicle. When parking on a slope, it is better to face the tires towards one side of vehicle, to prevent vehicle from moving accidentally.

■ Parking on downhill with curb



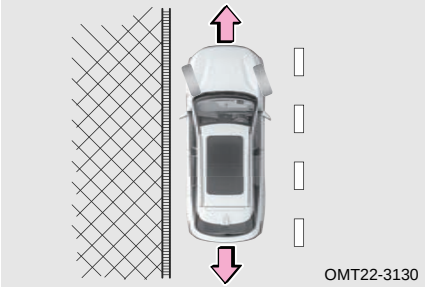
If there is a curb on the roadside, turn the steering wheel to the left to ensure that the front part of the front left wheel is close to or against the curb, to prevent the vehicle from sliding forward down the slope, then apply the parking brake.

■ Parking on uphill with curb



If there is a curb on the roadside, turn the steering wheel to the right to ensure that the rear part of the front left wheel is close to or against the curb, to prevent the vehicle from sliding back down the slope, then apply the parking brake.

■ Parking on uphill or downhill (without curb)



If there is no curb on the roadside, turn the steering wheel hard left to prevent the vehicle driving into the center of the road or sliding down the slope.Turn the steering wheel to the side of the road, so the vehicle is facing away from the center of the road when moving, then apply the parking brake.

■ Carrying passengers

Before driving, make sure all passengers sit in their seats with their seat belts properly fastened. Do not let the passengers sit in the places where there are no seats and seat belts, as they are likely to be seriously injured during a collision.

■ Locking the vehicle

- When leaving the vehicle unattended, carry smart key with you and lock all the doors, even if parking the vehicle in the garage or on the road outside your house.
- Park the vehicle in bright and spacious places as much as possible, and do not expose valuable items.

■ Exhaust gas

- Avoid inhaling the engine exhaust gas. It contains carbon monoxide (CO), which is a harmful, colorless and odorless gas. It can cause unconsciousness or even death after inhaling.
- Make sure the exhaust system has no leakage holes or loose connections. The exhaust system should be checked regularly. If a change in exhaust gas sound is heard, please have the system checked immediately.
- Do not run the engine in a garage or an enclosed area, unless moving the vehicle in or out. The exhaust gas cannot escape, which may cause serious injury.
- Do not stay in a parked vehicle for a long time with the engine running. If it is unavoidable, vehicle should be parked in a spacious area and adjust heating and cooling system to forcibly introduce outside air into vehicle.
- Keep the back door closed while driving. An open or unclosed back door may cause exhaust gas to enter the vehicle.
- To achieve proper operation of vehicle ventilation system, keep intake grilles free of snow, leaves, or other obstructions.
- If you smell exhaust fumes in vehicle, open windows to allow fresh air to enter and check vehicle condition.

Exhaust System Inspection

The exhaust system should be checked in the following situations:

1. When you smell exhaust fumes;
2. When you notice a changed noise coming from the exhaust system;
3. When exhaust system is damaged due to vehicle collision;
4. When the vehicle is lifted for inspection and repair.

1-9. Off-road Driving Precautions

Off-road Driving

Always observe the following precautions to minimize the risk of serious personal injury or damage to your vehicle:

- Be careful when driving off road. Do not drive in dangerous areas.
- Place both hands on the outer ring of the steering wheel when driving off road.
- Always check your brakes for effectiveness immediately after driving on roads covered with sand, mud, shallow water or snow.
- The driver and all passengers should fasten their seat belts whenever vehicle is moving.

⚠ WARNING

- After driving on road surfaces covered with tall grass, mud, gravel, sand, rivers, etc., check if there is grass, bush, paper, rags, stone, sand, etc. adhering to or trapped on underbody. Clear off any above materials from the underbody. If driving vehicle with those matters trapped on or adhering to the underbody, a breakdown or fire could occur.
- When driving off road or on rugged terrain, high speed driving, jumping, sharp turning and striking objects, etc. are forbidden. These activities may cause loss of control or vehicle rollover, resulting in death or severe personal injury. You are also risking expensive damage to your vehicle's suspension and chassis.

1-10. Precautions When Driving in Rainy Condition

When Driving on Slippery Road Surfaces

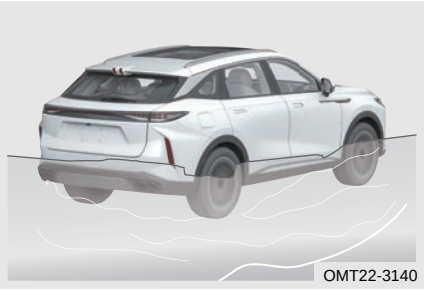
Drive carefully when it is raining, because visibility will be reduced, windows may become fogged-up and roads will be slippery.

- Do not drive at high speed when driving on a motorway in rain, because there may be a layer of water between tires and road surface, preventing steering system and brakes from operating properly.

⚠ CAUTION

- Sudden braking, acceleration and steering on slippery road surfaces may cause tire slippage and reduce your ability to control vehicle, resulting in an accident.
- Sudden changes in engine speed, such as sudden braking may cause vehicle to skid, resulting in an accident.
- After driving through a puddle, lightly depress brake pedal to make sure brakes are functioning properly. Wet brake lining may prevent brakes from functioning properly. If brake lining on one side is wet and not functioning properly, steering control may be affected, resulting in an accident.

Driving Through Water


OMT22-3140

The vehicle could be seriously damaged when driving on a road that has flooded after heavy rain. If driving through water is unavoidable, check the depth of the water and drive slowly and carefully.

1. When you are driving through water, make sure that the engine runs properly and that the steering and braking system works normally. When driving smoothly through water, you should switch to low gear and avoid a sudden depression of the accelerator pedal in order to prevent water from splashing into the engine.
2. Depress and hold accelerator pedal while driving, make sure vehicle has adequate and stable power. You should drive through without half-way stopping, gear shifting or sharp turning.
3. If vehicle stalls in water, never restart it immediately to prevent further damage to engine. The vehicle should be towed to a safe place where the water is shallow to find out the cause.

⚠ CAUTION

- Never drive through water that is deeper than wheel rim.
- Water intrusion into engine can cause it to stall, or cause serious internal damage.
- Water can wash the grease from the wheel bearing, causing rusting and premature abrasion.
- Driving through water may cause damage to your vehicle drive train components. Always visually inspect your vehicle's fluids (e.g. engine oil, transmission fluid, etc.) for signs of leakage after driving through water. Do not continue to operate vehicle if any fluid leaks, as this may result in further damage.
- Vehicle traction and braking performance will decrease while driving through water. The braking distance will increase. Sand and mud that have accumulated around the brake discs may affect the braking efficiency and may damage the brake system components. After driving through water, slightly depress the brake pedal several times to dry the brakes off.

1-11. Winter Driving Precautions

Winter Driving Tips

- Coolant: Make sure that coolant has anti-freezing function. Only use recommended coolant. More details about coolant type selection can be found in the MAINTENANCE section of this manual.
- Battery and cables: Low temperature will decrease power of battery. Sufficient power should be stored in battery for starting in winter.
- Oil: In winter, it is recommended to choose appropriate engine oil according to the local temperature condition. The lower viscosity at low temperature, the better fluidity at low temperature, indicating that the lower the ambient temperature at which the oil can be used. More details about oil type selection can be found in the MAINTENANCE section of this manual.
- Door locks: Avoid door locks being frozen. Deicing agent or glycerin should be sprayed into door lock holes.
- Washer fluid: Use washer fluid containing antifreeze. This product is available at authorized service station and most vehicle component distributors.
- Mudguards: Avoid ice and snow accumulation under mudguards. Failure to do so may cause difficult steering. When driving in cold weather, you should often stop vehicle to check for ice and snow accumulation under mudguards. It is recommended that you should take some necessary emergency items with you depending on different driving destinations. Items that need to be put in vehicle: Tire chains, window snow scraper, sand or salt bag, signal flasher, shovel, jumper cables, etc.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not use water as a substitute for coolant.
- Do not use engine coolant or other alternative washer fluid, otherwise vehicle paint will be damaged.

Driving on Road Covered with Ice and Snow

Rapid acceleration on slippery road surfaces, such as snow or ice covered roads, may cause the rear wheels slipping to right or left. Therefore, please drive at low speed and operate carefully.

It is possible to build up a layer of water film between the tire and road surface when driving on wet or slushy roads. This may prevent the steering and braking from operating properly. It is recommended that you enable ESP function on this occasion.

■ Driving out silt and ice and snow road

If drive wheel is stuck in silt or ice and snow, please attempt to shake vehicle at low speed and drive forward and backward repeatedly. Shift the shift lever between forward position and reverse position several times and depress accelerator pedal slightly. Avoid shifting the shift lever between forward position and reverse position for a long period of time, as this may cause excessive transmission wear.

Tire Chains

Purchase a set of tire chains that match size of the vehicle tires. Pay attention to the following precautions when installing and removing chains:

1. Follow local regulations when using chains;
2. Install and remove tire chains in a safe location;
3. Install tire chains by following the instructions provided;
4. Chains can only be installed on drive wheels;
5. It is recommended to use the beef tendon chains or rubber chains with a thickness not exceeding 12 mm, otherwise, tires, rims, drive system, brake system and wheel guard plates may be damaged. Vehicle damages resulting from improper use of chains are not covered by warranty;
6. Please consult authorized service station for details about wheels, tire size.

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents. Failure to do so may result in the vehicle unable to be driven safely, and may cause death or serious injury.

- Regulations regarding the use of tire chains vary depending on location and type of road. Always check local regulations before installing tire chains;
- Be sure to use chains that are suitable for your vehicle. Installing chain will affect vehicle handling, please drive carefully. Using improper chains or improper installing of chains may cause an accident and lead to injuries;
- Please follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the chains to install and remove chains, park the vehicle in a safe place before installation and removal. Be sure to turn off the engine before installing chains (automatic transmission is in P position), place the traffic warning signs if necessary;
- Do not drive vehicle at more than 30 km/h when chains are installed on vehicle, or refer to the vehicle speed limit specified by the manufacturer of chains, whichever is lower. It should avoid dangerous road conditions such as bumps, potholes, sharp turns etc. when installing chains, do not turn steering wheel sharply, lock brake urgently, accelerate or decelerate suddenly etc.

1-12. Cybersecurity Notice

Cybersecurity Support Service Update or Termination Notice

The company has provided cybersecuritysupport services in the corresponding software and equipment of the Internet of Vehicles service, and regularly or irregularly updates or terminates this service.

The scrapped vehicle will stop providing Network Security Services; Network Security Services will maintain essential service after the vehicle is discontinued for 10 years.

We can notify customers through website announcements, emails, in-vehicle systems, mobile phone text messages, voice calls, etc. according to the specific content of the notification.

Email, SMS, and voice calls will be sent to the email address and mobile phone listed in the customer's account registration information.

Cybersecurity Notice for Scrapping or Resale

Before you resell or scrap the vehicle, that is, when you no longer hold the vehicle, you should clear the personal information in the vehicle terminal by yourself.

The company does not assume any responsibility if the personal information of the vehicle terminal is leaked to a third party due to improper operation.

Our franchised dealers are familiar with the relevant regulations and can provide you with consulting services.

PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

2-1. Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster View 26

Driving Information 27

2-2. Operation/Malfunction Indicator

Operation/Malfunction Indicator 28

2-3. Steering Wheel

Horn..... 36

Adjusting Steering Wheel 36

2-4. Rear View Mirror

Inside Rear View Mirror..... 37

Outside Rear View Mirror 37

2-5. Wiper and Washer System

Wiper and Washer Operation..... 41

2-6. Vehicle Light

External Lighting 44

Internal Lighting 48

Fogging Instructions for Light..... 49

2-7. Seat

Front Seat..... 50

Rear Seat 55

Adjusting Head Restraint..... 56

Audio Headrest (If Equipped) 56

2-8. Seat Belt

Seat Belt Pretensioner 61

2-9. Child Restraint Systems

Child Restraint Systems..... 64

Top Tether..... 66

Installing Child Restraint Systems 68

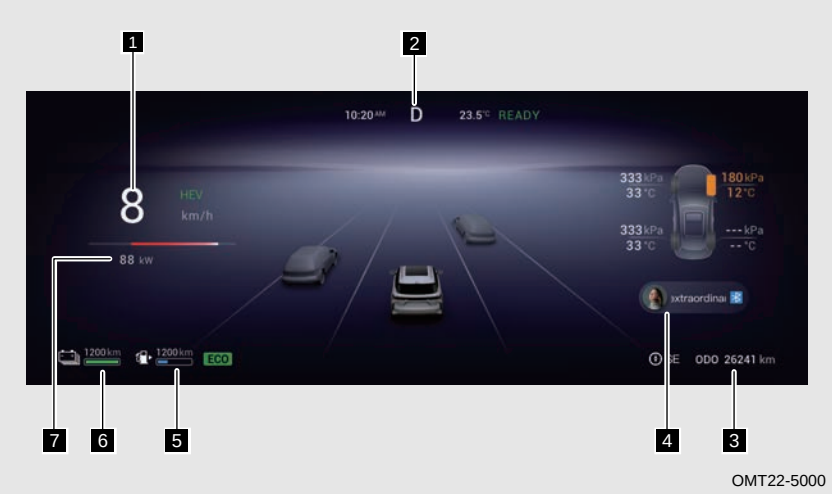
Enabling and Disabling Front Passenger Airbag (If Equipped)..... 70

Child Presence Detection (If Equipped)..... 71

2-1. Instrument Cluster

Please refer to the actual vehicle for all display images.

Instrument Cluster View



OMT22-5000

1 Speed information

2 Gear position information

3 Mileage information

4 Multimedia information

5 Fuel level information

6 Power information

7 Real-time electric drive power information

READ
Instrument cluster display screen has light chasing and star piloting modes, and the current display screen is light chasing mode.

Speed information

Current driving speed (unit: km/h).

CAUTION
Speedometer is affected by tire size used in vehicle. Only tires of original size can be used, otherwise the speedometer will not indicate the correct speed. For details of tire specifications, refer to "Vehicle Specifications".

Gear position information

Indicates the current selected gear position information of the vehicle.

Mileage information

Display total mileage of the vehicle.

READ

Mileage information can be set to Total Distance/HEV Distance/EV Distance in head unit system.

Multimedia information

Media music and radio information.

Fuel level information

Current remaining fuel in fuel tank and driving mileage.

When instrument cluster displays low fuel level or fuel low level warning light comes on, it indicates that remaining fuel is insufficient. Please add fuel as soon as possible.

READ

When the vehicle is accelerating, braking urgently, turning sharply or driving on a slope, the fuel level information might be inaccurate.

Power information

The current remaining SOC of power battery.

READ

Battery level display can be set to Battery Level/Standard Mileage/Dynamic Mileage in head unit system.

Real-time electric drive power information

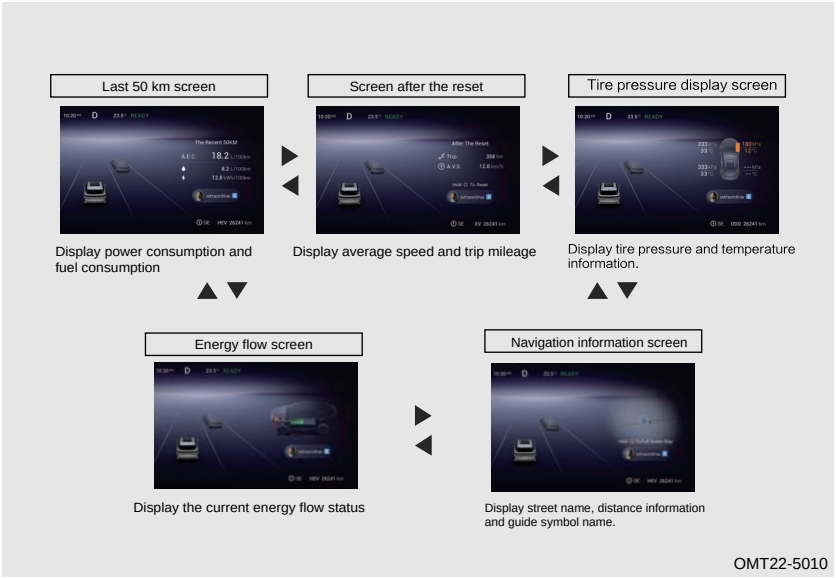
Current real-time electric drive power (unit: kw).

READ

The real-time electric drive power positive value indicates driving and negative value indicates charging.

Driving Information

Driving information screen includes the following screens, press " " button on steering wheel briefly to scroll through the following screens.



READ

On the reset screen, long press "◯" button on steering wheel to reset the average speed, trip mileage.

2-2. Operation/Malfunction Indicator

Operation/Malfunction Indicator

The operation indicator is used to alert driver the operating condition of a certain vehicle's system and the corresponding operation indicator will remain on.

Malfunction indicator is used to alert driver that a certain system of the vehicle is malfunctioning, the corresponding malfunction indicator will come on or flash.

When vehicle power is turned to ON mode, some malfunction indicators will come on for a short time, indicating system is performing self-check. If one system malfunction indicator remains on or flashes after starting the engine, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

Item	Indicator	Description
	Daytime running light indicator	Daytime running light indicator comes on when vehicle is started.

	Position indicator	When the position lights are turned on, the indicator comes on.
	Turn signal indicator	When the left or right turn signal lights are turned on, the corresponding turn signal indicator flashes. When hazard light switch is turned on, both left and right turn signal indicators will flash simultaneously.
	High beam light indicator	When the high beam light is turned on or the high beam lights flash, the indicator comes on.
	Intelligent high beam assist system operation indicator	This white indicator is used to indicate that the vehicle’s intelligent high beam assist system is in operating condition currently.
	Intelligent high beam assist system malfunction indicator	This indicator is used to indicate that the vehicle’s intelligent high beam assist system is malfunctioning currently. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
	Rear fog light indicator	When rear fog lights are turned on, the rear fog light indicator comes on.
	Front seat belt indicator	With vehicle powered on, if front passenger seat belt is not fastened or not fastened firmly, the indicator remains on. If vehicle speed reaches 22 km/h or more, the indicator will flash to inform front passenger to fasten the seat belt. For details, refer to "Seat Belt".
	Road frozen indicator	The indicator is used to remind the driver that the road is easy to freeze, please drive carefully.
	Door open reminder indicator	This indicator is used to alert the driver of the opening and closing status of driver door. When vehicle speed is ⩽ 3 km/h with a door open, there is no alarm sound, and the corresponding door open indicator remains on in red; When the vehicle speed is ⩾ 3 km/h, the corresponding door open indicator flashes, and the door opening sound alarm is triggered at the same time.
ECO	ECO mode indicator	When economic mode is turned on, the indicator comes on.

NORMAL	Normal mode indicator	When normal mode is turned on, the indicator comes on.
SPORT	Sport mode indicator	When sport mode is turned on, the indicator comes on.
SNOW	Snow mode indicator	When snow mode is turned on, the indicator comes on.
MUD	Muddy mode indicator	When muddy mode is turned on, the indicator comes on.
SAND	Sand mode indicator	When sand mode is turned on, the indicator comes on.
OFF-ROAD	Off-road mode indicator	When off-road mode is turned on, the indicator comes on.
	Automatic emergency braking system operation indicator	This indicator is used to indicate that automatic emergency braking system is in operating condition currently.
	Automatic emergency braking system malfunction indicator	This indicator is used to indicate that the automatic emergency braking system is malfunctioning. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
	Electrical parking indicator	This indicator is used to indicate that the vehicle is in an operating condition of electrical parking. For details, refer to "Brake System".
	Fatigue driving indicator	This indicator is used to remind the driver to take a rest.
	Fault information indicator	This indicator is used to alert the driver that vehicle is malfunctioning. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
	Maintenance indicator	This indicator is used to alert the driver that the vehicle needs maintenance. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
	ESP OFF indicator	When ESP function is turned off, ESP OFF indicator will come on, indicating that electronic stability system (ESP) is in disabled condition.

	ESP indicator	This indicator flashes to indicate that the vehicle’s ESP is in operating condition currently. This indicator remains on to alert the driver that ESP is malfunctioning. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible. When ESP malfunction indicator comes on, the vehicle can still carry out conventional braking function (without ESP), but should drive carefully and avoid driving at a high speed. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
	EPS malfunction indicator	This indicator remains on to indicate that EPS is malfunctioning currently.
	Steering angle initialization incomplete indicator	This indicator remains on to indicate that EPS is not initialized or calibrated currently.
	Hill descent indicator	This indicator is used to indicate that the vehicle’s hill descent is operating currently.
	Hill descent malfunction indicator	This indicator is used to indicate that the vehicle’s hill descent is malfunctioning currently. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
	Low washer fluid level indicator	This indicator is used to alert the driver that washer fluid is insufficient and needs to be added.

	Gasoline Particulate Filter (GPF) indicator	This indicator comes on and "Gasoline Particulate Filter (GPF) is full, please accelerate to clean it" is displayed. It goes off after flashing. In order to fully oxidize and burn the particles in GPF, the driver needs to take the following actions: If road conditions permit, drive at high speed (vehicle speed is 80 km/h or higher) within 1 h, or vehicle speed is higher than 50 km/h within 2 h. After the particles are cleaned, GPF indicator will go off automatically. If the indicator still comes on, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair.
	Gasoline Particulate Filter (GPF) malfunction indicator	This indicator comes on to indicate that Gasoline Particulate Filter (GPF) is full, (-particles are too much). In order to fully oxidize and burn the particles in GPF, the driver needs to take the following actions: If road conditions permit, drive at high speed (-vehicle speed is 80 km/h or higher) within 1 h, or vehicle speed is higher than 50 km/h within 2 h. After the particles are cleaned, GPF indicator will go off automatically. If the indicator still comes on, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair.
	ABS malfunction indicator	This indicator is used to alert the driver that ABS is malfunctioning. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible. When ABS malfunction indicator comes on, the vehicle can still carry out conventional braking function (without ABS), but should drive carefully and avoid driving at a high speed. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

	Charging system indicator	This indicator is used to display the operating condition of charging system. If this indicator does not come on when the vehicle is powered on, or comes on after starting, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
	High coolant temperature warning indicator	This indicator is used to alert the driver that engine coolant temperature is high. Drive vehicle to a safe area and stop, power off the vehicle after idling for several minutes. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
	Low fuel level warning indicator	This indicator is used to alert the driver that fuel is insufficient. Please add fuel as soon as possible.
	Airbag malfunction indicator	This indicator is used to alert the driver that airbag system is malfunctioning. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
	Tire pressure malfunction indicator	This indicator is used to alert the driver that tire pressure is malfunctioning. Please check if tire pressure is too low/high. If tire pressure is abnormal, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
	Brake system malfunction indicator	This indicator is used to alert the driver that brake fluid level is too low or brake system is malfunctioning. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
	Auto hold operation indicator	This indicator is used to indicate that the vehicle is in auto hold condition currently.
	Traffic jam assist system and integrated cruise assist system operation indicator	This indicator is used to indicate that traffic jam assist system and integrated cruise assist system is in operating condition currently.

	Blind spot detection system malfunction indicator	This indicator is used to indicate that the blind spot detection system is malfunctioning. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
	Lane departure warning system malfunction indicator	This indicator is used to indicate that the lane departure warning system is malfunctioning. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
	Lane departure prevention system or emergency lane keeping system malfunction indicator	This indicator is used to indicate that the lane departure prevention system or emergency lane keeping system is malfunctioning. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
	Low engine oil pressure warning indicator	This indicator is used to alert the driver that engine oil pressure is low. Drive vehicle to a safe area and stop. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
	4WD system malfunction indicator	This indicator is used to alert the driver that 4WD is malfunctioning. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
	EPC malfunction indicator	This indicator is used to alert the driver that engine system is malfunctioning. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
	Engine malfunction indicator	This indicator is used to alert the driver that engine is malfunctioning. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
	Transmission malfunction indicator	This indicator is used to alert the driver that transmission system is malfunctioning. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
	Charging indicator	This indicator is used to alert the driver that charging connection device is connected.

	Discharging indicator	This indicator is used to alert the driver that discharging connection device is connected.
	Power battery low charge warning indicator	This indicator is used to alert the driver that the power battery is low. Please charge in time.
	Severely depleted power battery indicator	This indicator is used to alert the driver that the power battery is seriously depleted. Please charge in time.
	Power limit indicator	This indicator indicates that the power and acceleration performance of vehicle are limited. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
	Power system malfunction indicator	This indicator is used to alert the driver that power system is malfunctioning. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
	Pedestrian reminder OFF indicator	This indicator is used to alert the driver that pedestrian reminder function is turned off.
	High voltage insulation malfunction indicator	This indicator remains on to alert the driver that the insulating property of high voltage system decreases. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
	High voltage severe insulation malfunction indicator	This indicator remains on to alert the driver that the insulating property of high voltage system seriously decreases. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
	Power battery malfunction indicator	This indicator indicates vehicle power battery is malfunctioning. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
READY	Driving ready indicator	This indicator is used to alert driver that vehicle is ready for normal driving. If the indicator does not come on, it indicates that vehicle is malfunctioning or other conditions are not met, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

⚠ CAUTION

When the malfunction indicator on instrument cluster comes on, stop the vehicle in a suitable place according to the surrounding environment, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

2-3. Steering Wheel

Horn

OMT22-2150

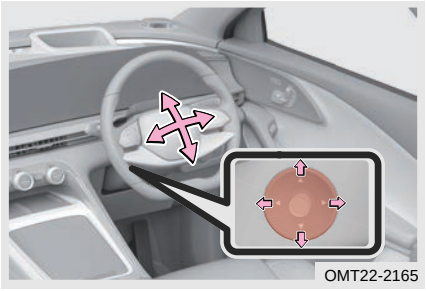
To sound the horn, press area near horn mark on the steering wheel.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not sound horn in places such as schools, hospitals, or residential areas.
- Strictly obey local regulations regarding usage of vehicle horns.

Adjusting Steering Wheel

Adjusting steering wheel electrically


OMT22-2165

Vehicle power is switched to ON mode, press the power adjustment steering wheel switch, adjust the steering wheel up and down/forward and backward to adjust it to a proper position.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not adjust steering wheel while driving, doing so may cause driver to mishandle the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.
- For safety, after adjusting steering wheel, try moving steering wheel up and down/forward and backward to make sure that it is securely locked. Otherwise, steering wheel may move suddenly during driving, causing unnecessary injury and loss.

2-4. Rear View Mirror

Inside Rear View Mirror

Adjust inside rear view mirror to a proper position before driving, to make sure driver can achieve an optimum view. Manually adjust the inside rear view mirror to desired position.

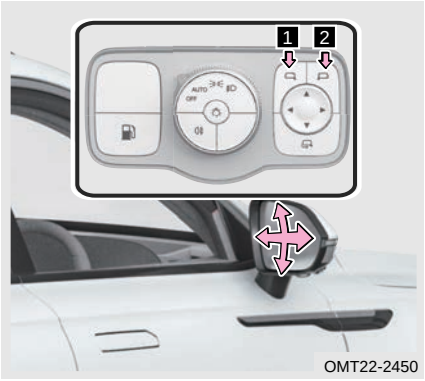
■ Automatic glare-resistant

To reduce glare from the headlights of vehicles behind during night driving, brightness of the lens will be automatically detected and adjusted.

Outside Rear View Mirror

Outside rear view mirror adjustment

When the vehicle is powered on, the outside rear view mirror angle can be adjusted with rear view mirror adjustment switch.



1 Left outside rear view mirror selection button: Press this button (indicator comes on) to adjust the left outside rear view mirror lens position within tens of seconds; Press this button again (indicator goes off) to turn off the left outside rear view mirror lens adjustment function.

2 Right outside rear view mirror selection button: Press this button (indicator comes on) to adjust the right outside rear view mirror lens position within tens of seconds; Press this button again (indicator goes off) to turn off the right outside rear view mirror lens adjustment function.

▲ : Adjust outside rear view mirror lens upward.

▼ : Adjust outside rear view mirror lens downward.

◀ : Adjust outside rear view mirror lens to the left.

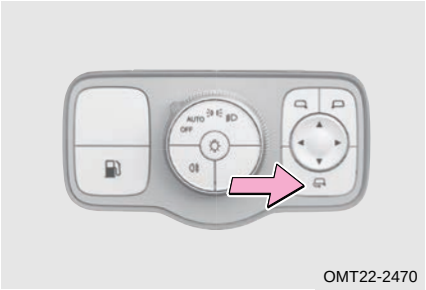
▶ : Adjust outside rear view mirror lens to the right.

On rear view mirror adjustment screen of the head unit, adjust the left/right outside rear view mirror lens angle by the steering wheel button; Exit this screen, the steering wheel button cannot adjust the angle of outside rear view mirror lens.

⚠ WARNING

- Image displayed on outside rear view mirror may differ from the actual, so always drive carefully.
- Do not adjust the outside rear view mirror while driving, failure to do so may result in an accident due to mishandling or even serious injury or death.

■ Folding/extending outside rear view mirror

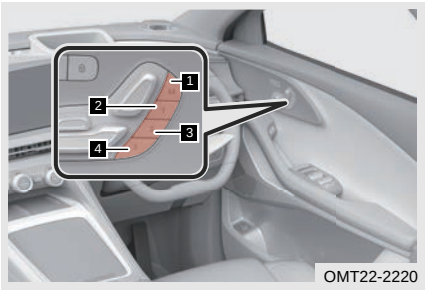


Fold automatically:

1. Operate using button: Press outside rear view mirror folding button to fold mirrors automatically, press the button again to extend mirrors automatically (do not fold manually).
2. Operate using key: In arming mode, outside rear view mirrors fold automatically; In disarming mode, outside rear view mirrors extend automatically.

Outside rear view mirror memory function

■ Outside rear view mirror position memory



1 Memory setting switch

2 Position 1 switch

3 Position 2 switch

4 Position 3 switch

Memory setting of outside rear view mirror: After adjusting the position of outside rear view mirror, long press the memory setting switch until the instrument cluster emits a prompt tone, and then long press the position 1/position 2/position 3 switch. If the instrument cluster displays that the memory position has been completed, the corresponding position is stored in position 1/position 2/position 3.

Outside rear view mirror memory setting: After adjusting the outside rear view mirror position, short press the save button to store the memory position.

Outside rear view mirror memory position usage: When using the outside rear view mirror memory position, short press the recovery button until the outside rear view mirror moves, and the outside rear view mirror will automatically move to the corresponding position.

■ Usage of outside rear view mirror position

When you need to use the outside rear view mirror memory position (current smart key ID), long press the position 1/position 2/position 3 switch until the outside rear view mirror operates to release your finger, and outside rear view

mirror will automatically move to the corresponding position; Or short press the recovery button on head unit setting screen, to move the outside rear view mirror to the memorized position.

READ

The memory binding method of outside rear view mirror is the same as that of the seat. For details, refer to "Seat Memory Function".

Flip-down of outside rear view mirror when reversing

When gear position is shifted to R, the outside rear view mirror will automatically flip down to help you see the curb below. At this time, adjust position of lens via rear view mirror switch. When shifting out of R position, the position will be saved automatically (outside rear view mirror automatic flipping down position).

The flipping-down outside rear view mirrors will return to their original positions under following conditions:

- Shift out of R position.
- Vehicle speed is higher than 10 km/h.
- Vehicle is powered off.

READ

Flip-down of outside rear view mirror during reversing needs to be set in head unit system. For details, refer to "Head Unit System".

CAUTION

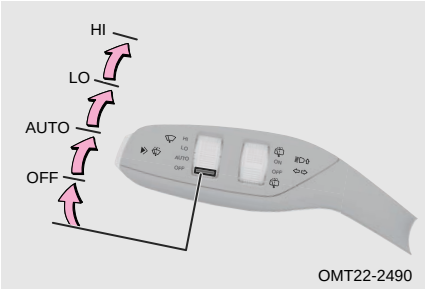
- When folding and extending the outside rear view mirror, do not touch its surface to prevent damage to it with excessive force.
- When vehicle speed is higher than 10 km/h, outside rear view mirror folding function is shielded, and extending function is available.
- In cold winter, it is recommended to turn off rear view mirror automatic folding function and flip-down function of outside rear view mirror when reversing by head unit system setting. This will prevent the outside rear view mirror from being frozen in folding position due to accumulated snow or rain, thus affecting the normal driving of vehicle.
- According to visual field requirements, folding angles of the left and right mirrors are different. Therefore, when outside rear view mirrors are automatically fold, the left and right mirrors are not synchronized, which is normal.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not fold the outside rear view mirrors while driving.
- Be careful not to get your hand caught by a moving outside rear view mirror.
- For vehicle with power outside rear view mirror, do not fold and extend outside rear view mirrors by hand to prevent folding driver gear from being broken due to excessive force, causing its folding function to fail.

2-5. Wiper and Washer System

Wiper and Washer Operation



Vehicle is powered on, pull left combination switch button of steering wheel:

" HI " High speed mode: Wipers operate quickly and continuously.

" LO " Low speed mode: Wipers operate slowly and continuously.

"AUTO" Auto mode: Control wiping speed of wiper according to amount of rain.

" OFF " Stop mode: Wipers turn off automatically.

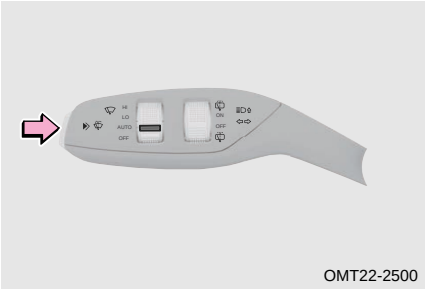
READ

If you need to control the wiper frequency more accurately, you can set the wiper sensitivity in the head unit system. For details, refer to "Head Unit System".

⚠ CAUTION

- In cold weather, always check if wiper blade is frozen onto windshield before using wipers. If so, defrost before using, failure to do so may cause damage to the wiper motor and blade strip.
- If there are obstacles on windshield, do not operate wipers. Doing so may damage wiper motor or scratch the windshield.
- Do not operate wipers when windshield is dry. Doing so may scratch the glass and damage wiper blade.

Front washer operation instructions



OMT22-2500

Vehicle is powered on, short press the left button, the wiper will stop after wiping once; Press and hold the button, front washer sprays water, and front wiper operates simultaneously. After releasing, front washer stops working and wiper will operate several times.

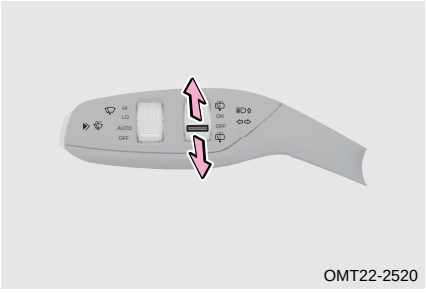
READ

When replacing the front wiper blade, please adjust the wiper to the maintenance mode. For details, refer to "Replacing Wiper Blade".

CAUTION

- When operating wiper and washer, do not exceed 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not operate washer when there is no washer fluid in reservoir.
- Do not try to clear a nozzle with a pin or other objects when it becomes blocked, or it will be damaged.

Rear wiper operation instructions



OMT22-2520

Vehicle is powered on, and turn the rear wiper to "ON" position, the rear wiper works, when turning it to "OFF" position, the rear wiper stops.

When turn the rear wiper to " " position and hold it, rear washer sprays water, and rear wiper operates simultaneously.

READ

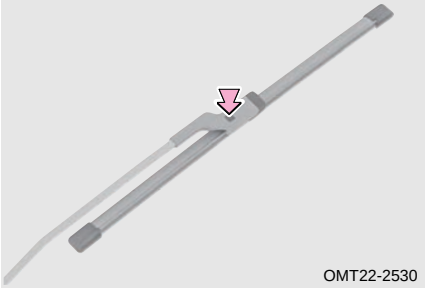
When front wiper is operating, shift the shift lever to R, the rear wiper will operate automatically.

CAUTION

- Do not operate washer for more than 10 seconds each time.
- Do not operate washer when there is no washer fluid in reservoir.
- Do not try to clear a nozzle with a pin or other objects when it becomes blocked, or it will be damaged.

Replacing wiper blades

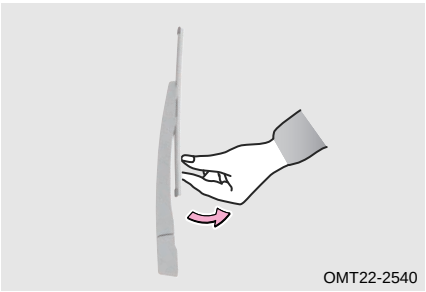
■ Replacing front wiper blade


OMT22-2530

Enter the maintenance mode before replacing the front wiper blade, and perform operation as follows:

1. Short press power-off switch in head unit system to turn off vehicle. Short press left button on combination switch of steering wheel, the wiper lift to stop position automatically;
2. Lift the front wiper arm;
3. Pull up wiper blades while pressing the lock button, so as to remove the blades;
4. Install the new wiper blades in reverse order, and make sure the hold-down clamp is locked firmly;
5. Check that front wipers work properly.

■ Replacing rear wiper blade


OMT22-2540

1. Lift the rear wiper arm and hold;
2. Separate the wiper blade by hand as shown in the illustration;
3. Install the new wiper blades in reverse order, and be sure to install it in place;
4. Check that rear wipers work properly.

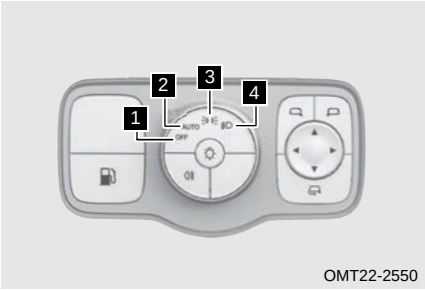
READ

It is recommended that you have wiper blades replaced by someone at authorized service station to ensure correct fitting.

2-6. Vehicle Light

External Lighting

Headlight combination switch



When the vehicle is powered on, rotate headlight combination switch:

1 Turning off "OFF"

Turn off headlight.

2 Auto headlight "AUTO"

Automatically senses the intensity of external light, turn position lights, low beam lights on/off.

3 Position light " "

Turn on front and rear position lights, license plate light, ambient lights and backlights.

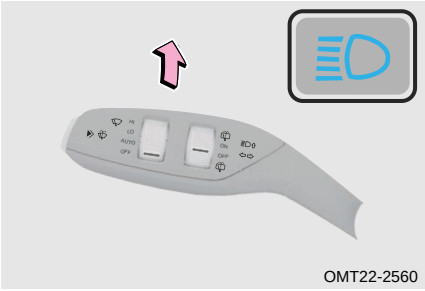
4 Low beam light " "

Turn on low beam lights and position lights.

READ

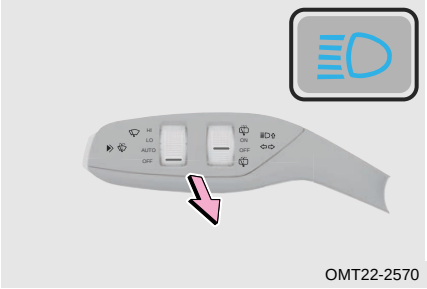
When the vehicle is powered on, turn headlight combination switch to "OFF" position. Turn off the headlight, the headlight combination switch will automatically return to "AUTO" position.

Headlight high beam



Turn on low beam light, and then toggle left combination switch of steering wheel away from steering wheel side and release, headlight high beam light comes on.

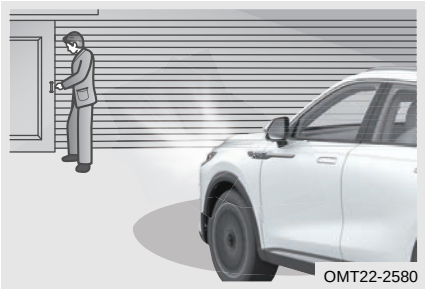
Toggle left combination switch of steering wheel towards steering wheel side and release to turn off headlight high beam light.


OMT22-2570

Toggle left combination switch of steering wheel towards steering wheel side and release it to flash the headlight high beam light once. At the same time, headlight high beam indicator in instrument cluster blinks once.
You can flash headlight high beam with headlights on/off.

⚠ CAUTION
If park vehicle for a long time, make sure that headlight is turned off to avoid discharging battery. Failure to do so may cause the vehicle cannot be started.

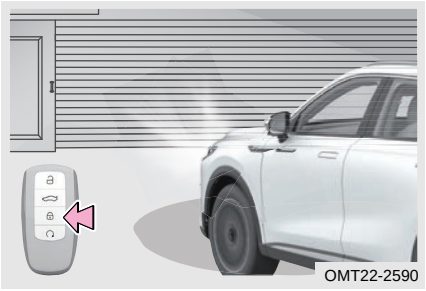
Follow me home function


OMT22-2580

Rotate the headlight combination switch to "AUTO" position. When the vehicle is in a dim environment, press lock button on smart key, vehicle is armed successfully. Low beam lights and position lights automatically come on for 27 seconds; Press lock button on smart key again to activate it again. After reaching the set operating time, the follow me home function will be turned off automatically. Low beam lights and position lights will go off immediately.

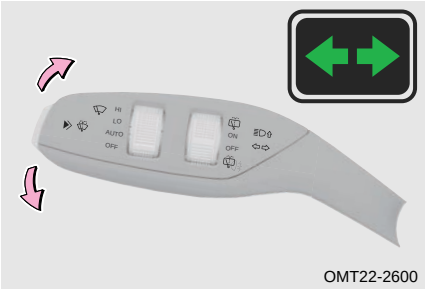
READ
Before using the follow me home function, you need to set the headlights delay to ON in head unit. For details, refer to "Head Unit System".

Smart vehicle locating function


OMT22-2590

Turn the headlight combination switch to " AUTO " position before exiting the vehicle. When the vehicle is in a dim environment, press unlock button on smart key, the low beam lights and position lights automatically turn on for 27 seconds.

Turn signal light


OMT22-2600

Pull up: Right turn signal light comes on.

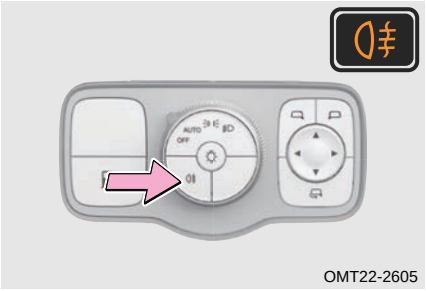
Pull down: Left turn signal light comes on.

When turn signal lights are turned on, the turn signal light will flash in the instrument cluster. As vehicle is turning back after turning, combination switch automatically returns to center position.

Lane change assist function

Vehicle is powered on, lightly toggle the left combination switch of the steering wheel upward/downward once but not over steering point, and the turn signal light will flash three times.

Rear fog light


OMT22-2605

Vehicle is powered on, turn on the low beam light, and press rear fog light switch " ", rear fog light turns on; press the switch again, the rear fog light turns off.

READ

- When turning off low beam lights, rear fog lights is turned off at the same time.
- Use fog lights correctly in accordance with local traffic laws and regulations.

Ground light

When pressing unlock button on smart key/opening door in dark, ground light will come on automatically; When vehicle is armed successfully, ground light will go off immediately.

License plate light

Turn headlight combination switch to " " position to turn on license plate lights. They are used to illuminate license plate in dark.

Back-up light

Start vehicle, shift the shift lever to R, back-up light turns on.

Brake light

Depress the brake pedal, brake light and high mounted stop light turn on.

Curve assist lighting system

Vehicle is powered on, turn on the low beam light, and vehicle speed is lower than 40 km/h. When any of the following conditions is met, the cornering light is turned on:

1. Steering wheel angle is 45° or higher.
2. Left/right turn signal light is turned on.
3. Shift the shift lever to R, back-up light turns on.

READ

Vehicle is powered off, turn off the low beam light; steering wheel angle is lower than 10°, turn signal light is turned off and gear position is shifted out of R, and the cornering light is turned off.

Adaptive Low Beam Light System (AFS)

When the vehicle is driving on different road conditions of city and highway, and the low beam light is turned on, the system automatically adjusts the lighting effect of low beam light according to different roads, and increases the lighting coverage area of low beam light to adapt to different road conditions, improving lighting effect and increasing driving safety.

Music rhythm

Vehicle is powered on, shift the shift position to P, turn off the headlight. When the music rhythm is turned on in head unit and play the music, the front and rear position lights, turn signal lights will appear dynamic lighting scenes along with the music.

CAUTION

When the vehicle is not started, avoid long-term use of music rhythm, resulting in depleted battery.

Internal Lighting

Front dome light

OMT22-2610

Touch the front left/right dome light, the front dome light on corresponding side comes on; Touch the front left/ right dome light again, the front dome light on corresponding side turns off.

READ

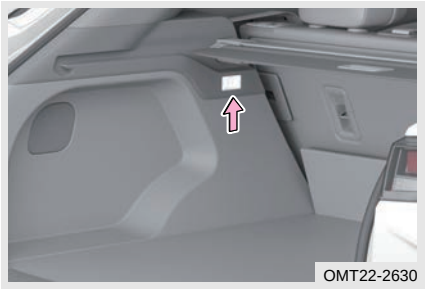
- When the vehicle is unlocked after the vehicle is armed, the front dome light comes on for 15 seconds and then goes off.
- Vehicle is powered off, front dome light comes on for 3 minutes.
- Vehicle is powered on, any door is opened and remains open, the front dome light come on for about 3 minutes. All doors are closed within 3 minutes, and the front dome light is turned off.
- When the vehicle is unlocked after the vehicle is armed, the front dome light comes on for 15 seconds and then goes off.
- Vehicle is powered off, front dome light comes on for 3 minutes.
- Vehicle is powered on, any door is opened and remains open, the front dome light come on for about 3 minutes. All doors are closed within 3 minutes, and the front dome light is turned off.

Rear dome light

OMT22-2620

Press the rear dome light switch, rear dome light comes on, press it again, rear dome light turns off.

Luggage compartment light


OMT22-2630

When back door is opened, luggage compartment light will turn on automatically. When back door is closed, luggage compartment light will turn off immediately.

Doorsill light

When any door is opened, the corresponding side doorsill light comes on for 3 minutes.

Ambient light

With ambient light set to ON in head unit, when the position light is on or any door is opened, the ambient light inside the vehicle comes on. User can set the color and brightness of ambient light in head unit as required.

Fogging Instructions for Light

When the weather is cold or humid, the inner side of lights will fog up due to the difference in temperature between the inside and outside . After lights turn on for a period of time, the fog inside the lens will gradually disappear, and there may still be some fog at the edge of the lens. This is normal. This fog has no effect on service life of lighting system. The vehicle lights generate fog, which gradually begins to disappear in the lens of the headlight within 30 minutes after the low and high beam lights are turned on. After a period of lighting, the moisture disappears naturally. This is normal.

⚠ WARNING

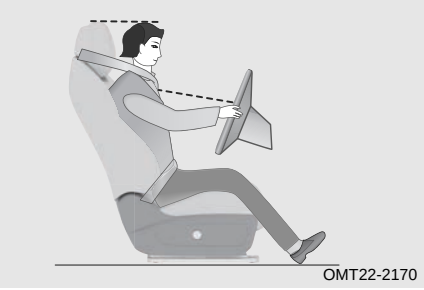
- It is strictly forbidden to flush the engine compartment with a high pressure water gun, in particular, the lights cannot be flushed. Due to high pressure of high pressure water gun, accessories on lights may loose or fall off, vent hole and wire harness connector may damp, resulting in water infiltration or moisture not dispersing for a long time, and even severe condensation.
- When wading, following vehicle wading requirements (water depth, speed, etc.), otherwise water may enter lights.
- Headlights are all LED lights and cannot be repaired separately.

2-7. Seat

Front Seat

Correct sitting posture

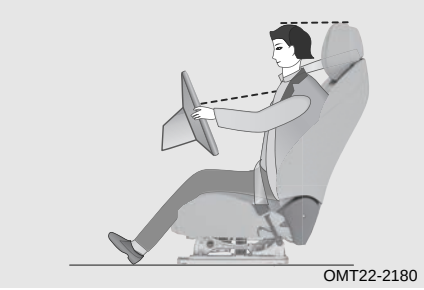
The seats, head restraints, seat belts and airbags are helpful to protect driver and passengers. Using them fully will provide you with more protection. Please observe the followings:


OMT22-2170

When sitting, sit slightly inclined backwards (25° backward is ideal) and well back on seatback.

The front seats must not be too close to the instrument panel. During driving, the arms should be bent slightly while holding steering wheel. The feet should also be bent slightly so that pedals can be fully depressed.

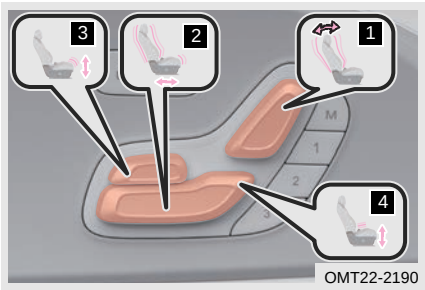
Adjust head restraints properly so that the top of the head restraint is closest to the top of your head.


OMT22-2180

The shoulder belt should be over the center of the shoulder and close to the chest, kept away from the neck, the lap belt should lie over the hips but not stomach.

Seat adjustment

■ Adjusting driver seat



1 Adjusting seatback

Move upper end of button forward and backward to adjust seatback angle.

2 Adjusting seat forward and backward

Move button forward and backward to adjust the seat back and forth.

3 Adjusting seat leg support

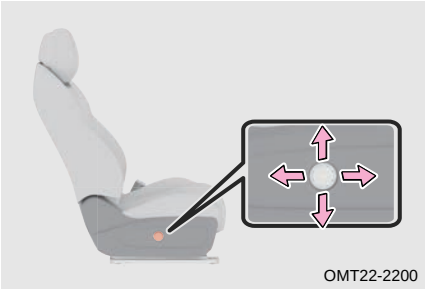
Move button forward and backward to adjust the seat leg support angle.

4 Adjusting seat height

Move rear end of button up or down to adjust seat height.

READ
The seat position can also be adjusted on the driver seat position adjustment screen in head unit.

■ Adjusting driver seat waist



By continuous adjustment using lumbar support button, lumbar support function makes driver waist in a comfortable position, solving a series of problems caused by curling waist up in seat.

Long press " ⇦ " to increase support to overall forward side of waist.

Long press " ⇨ " to reduce support to overall forward side of waist.

Long press " ⇧ " to increase the forward support on the upper end of the waist, and reduce the forward support on the lower end of the waist.

Long press " ⇩ " to increase the forward support on the lower end of the waist, and reduce the forward support on the upper end of the waist.

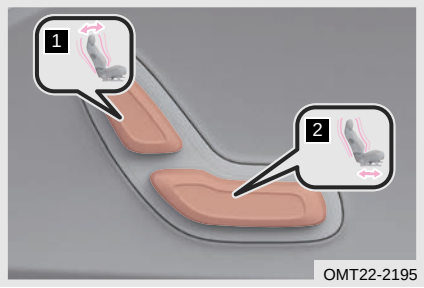
⚠ CAUTION

When adjusting position forward and backward using lumbar support button, there is a certain limit position. When reaching the limit position, release the button in time.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not adjust the seat while driving.
- After adjusting the seatback, lean your body against it to make sure that the seat is locked in position.
- Do not place any items under the seat while moving the seat, otherwise, it will prevent the seat from moving.
- Avoid reclining seatback any more than needed, the seat belts provide maximum protection in a frontal or rear collision when the driver and the front passenger sit inclined slightly backwards and well back in their seats.

■ Adjusting front passenger seat

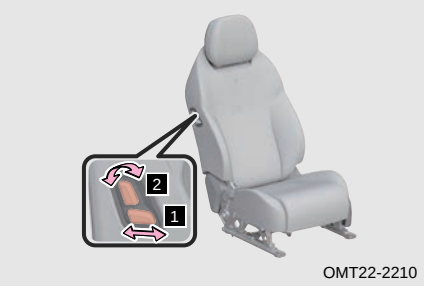


1 Adjusting seatback

Move upper end of button forward and backward to adjust seatback angle.

5 Adjusting seat forward and backward

Move button forward and backward to adjust the seat back and forth.



1 Adjusting seat forward and backward

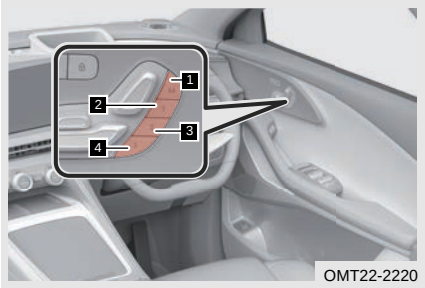
Move button forward and backward to adjust the seat back and forth.

2 Adjusting seatback

Move upper end of button forward and backward to adjust seatback angle.

Seat memory function

■ Seat position memory



1 Memory setting switch

2 Position 1 switch

3 Position 2 switch

4 Position 3 switch

Seat memory setting: After adjusting the position of seat, long press the memory setting switch until the instrument cluster emits a prompt tone, and then long press the position 1/position 2/position 3 switch. If the instrument cluster displays that the memory position has been completed, the corresponding position is stored in position 1/position 2/position 3.

Seat memory setting: After adjusting the seat position, short press the save button to store the memory position.

Seat memory position usage: When using the seat memory position, short press the recovery button until the seat moves, and the seat will automatically move to the corresponding position.

■ Usage of seat position

When you need to use the seat memory position (current smart key ID), long press the position 1/position 2/position 3 switch until the seat operates to release your finger, and seat will automatically move to the corresponding position; Or short press reset on head unit setting screen, to move the seat to the memorized position.

READ

- The supplied smart key and NFC card key (if equipped) are key ID to unlock and identify ID source. If position memory and key binding is turned off in head unit, the switch memory function is used normally, but the head unit memory function cannot be used.
- Depending on the vehicle configuration, the seat memory binding method is divided into seat memory and key binding, seat memory and face recognition binding. Please use the driving position in head unit in priority.

⚠ WARNING
When seat memory binding function turns on, please ensure that nobody is caught. If so, move the seat adjustment button to stop operation of seats. Do not leave children alone in vehicle. Otherwise, they may be caught due to seat memory function.

Easy seat access/exit function

- Open driver door, driver seat goes backwards a certain distance automatically so that driver can get off conveniently.
- Close driver door, driver seat goes forwards a certain distance automatically so that driver can enter driving position conveniently.

READ
Easy seat access/exit needs to be set in head unit system. For details, refer to "Head Unit System".

⚠ WARNING
When easy seat function turns on, please ensure that nobody is caught; If there is risk to be caught by seat, cancel adjustment by moving the seat adjustment switch. Do not leave children alone with no one care in vehicle. They may open the driver door and may be caught due to accidental activation of easy seat function.

Front seat heating and ventilation function

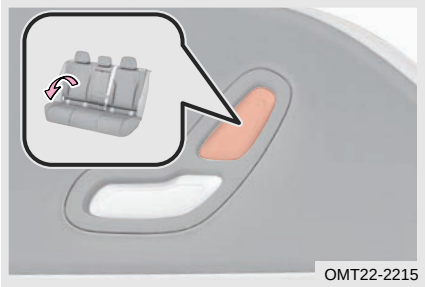
OMT22-2240

Start the vehicle, press the driver/ front passenger seat heater switch, and the seat will be heated (ON - level 3 - level 2 - level 1 - OFF).

Start the vehicle, press the driver/ front passenger seat ventilation switch, and the seat will be ventilated (ON - level 3 - level 2 - level 1 - OFF).

Rear Seat

Adjusting seatback electrically


OMT22-2215

Move upper end of door protective panel button forward and backward to adjust rear seatback angle.

READ

When adjusting the left button of rear seat, the left seatback and middle seatback are adjusted at the same time.

Folding rear seats

OMT22-2270

Pull unlock button on upper part of seatback by hand to release the seatback while pulling the seatback forward to folding it down.

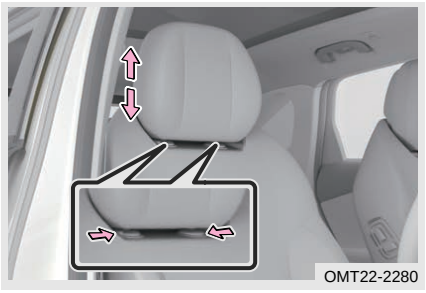
⚠ CAUTION

When folding rear seat, make sure that outer seat belt passes around the seatback to avoid damaging the belt.

Seat stroke

Item \ Seat	Front Seat	Rear Seat
Front-rear Adjustment	Adjust 180 mm forward and 60 mm backward at designed position.	/
Front-rear Adjustment (Front Passenger with Foot Rest)	Adjust 180 mm forward and 80 mm backward at designed position.	/
Seatback Angle	Adjust 30° forward and 50° backward at designed position.	Manual: Total angle: 5°; Power: Total angle: 7°.
Height Adjustment	Adjust 40 mm upward and 20 mm downward at designed position.	/
Driver Leg Rest Adjustment	Total adjustable stroke: 50 mm.	/

Adjusting Head Restraint


OMT22-2280

When adjusting head restraint upward, pull it up directly to a proper height.

When adjusting head restraint downward, press the unlock button on the right of head restrain to unlock and hold, and then adjust it lower.

To remove head restraint, simultaneously press the left and right unlock buttons and hold until the head restraint lever is unlocked completely and then pull it out completely.

READ

- Both sides of headrest can be adjusted manually to the center for some configurations, please refer to the actual vehicle.
- The audio head restraint only supports height adjustment and cannot be removed, otherwise it may cause damage to the audio head restraint.

WARNING

- Always adjust the head restraint to proper position.
- After adjusting the head restraint, push it down and make sure that it is locked in position.
- Do not drive vehicle with head restraint removed.

Audio Headrest (If Equipped)

Driver audio headrest enhances listening effect and privacy of driver, as well as the driving experience when occupants are at rest.

With vehicle in READY state, set Head restraint loudspeaker through Vehicle Center - Sound.

Share mode: Turn off the headrest audio function.

Private share mode: Phone/Navigation/TTS/Multimedia/Button tone are played by headrest audio.

Driving share mode: Navigation broadcast/phone are played by headrest audio, and music is played by the vehicle audio.

CAUTION

The audio head restraint only supports height adjustment and cannot be removed, otherwise it may cause damage to the audio head restraint.

2-8. Seat Belt

OMT22-2290

Remind that front seat belt is not buckled or fastened firmly:

When vehicle speed is lower than 22 km/h, "" red indicator on instrument cluster remains on. When vehicle speed is 22 km/h or higher, "" red indicator on instrument cluster blinks, accompanied by sound alarm.

Remind that rear seat belt is not buckled or fastened firmly (if equipped):

When vehicle speed is 22 km/h or higher, "" red indicator on combination cluster remains on after blinking for 40 seconds, accompanied by sound alarm (the indicator remains on in red when the rear seat belt is not fastened, remains on in green when fastened, and goes off when all fastened)

READ

The front passenger seat belt alarm function is not standard. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

CAUTION

- Vehicle speed mentioned in this section refers to speed displayed by instrument cluster.
- When the vehicle is stationary, if it is impacted by other vehicle, it may cause airbags and/or seat belts to operate.

OMT22-2300

We strongly recommend the driver and passengers wear their seat belts correctly at all times. Failure to do so could increase possibility and severity of injury in case of an accident. Check the seat belt regularly. If any seat belt function failure is found, please contact authorized service station immediately to inspect, repair or replace the belt.

■ Using seat belt correctly

OMT22-2310

- Adjust seatback position, sit up straight and well back in the seat.
- Extend the shoulder belt so that it comes fully over the shoulder, but does not come into contact with the neck or slide off the shoulder.
- Position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips.
- Do not twist the seat belt.

■ Maintaining seat belt

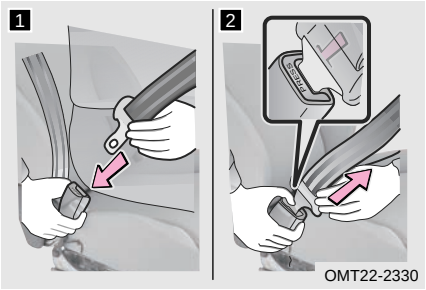
OMT22-2320

The seat belt should be inspected regularly for damage or wear. Any stretched seat belt (such as after a traffic accident) should be inspected at once by authorized service station or replace relevant components as needed.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not allow water to penetrate belt retractor mechanism.
- Do not use chemical detergent, boiling water, bleach or dye to wash the seat belt.
- The seat belt should be washed with mild cleanser or warm water and dry naturally. Never clean it with artificial heat.
- Do not try to repair or lubricate retractor or buckle mechanism of seat belt, or repair seat belt in any way,We will not be held for any problem caused in this way..

■ Fastening and releasing seat belt



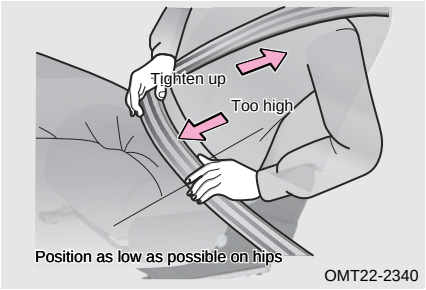
1 To fasten the seat belt, push the tab into the buckle until a click sound is heard.

2 Press the release button to retract seat belt. If the belt cannot retract smoothly, pull it out and check for kinks or twists. Make sure that seat belt can retract smoothly.

⚠ CAUTION

- Make sure that seat belt buckle position is correct and is locked safely, improper engagement may cause serious injury.
- Do not use any seat belt with a loose buckle, otherwise, the seat belt will not protect the passengers in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

■ Adjusting position of three-point type seat belt

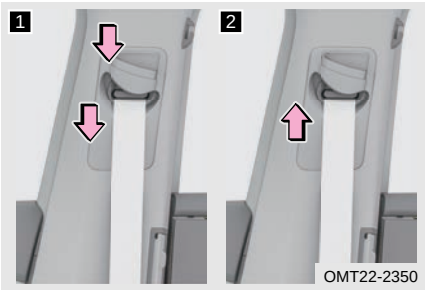


The seat belt will lock when it is pulled out quickly, but will not lock when pulling it out slowly. Position the lap belt as low as possible on your hips not on your waist, then adjust it to a snug fit by pulling the shoulder belt upward.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not place the shoulder belt under your arm.
- Ensure that all the passengers wear their seat belts properly.
- Each seat belt shall be used by one person only. Do not use a seat belt for more than one person at one time, including children.
- We recommend that children are seated in the rear seat and always use seat belt or appropriate child restraint system.
- When pulling out seat belt, it may lock if too much force is applied or the vehicle is on a slope.
- Avoid loose fitting clothes when driving. These can prevent the seatbelt fitting correctly and can affect the protection offered.
- Do not recline seat more than necessary to achieve a comfortable ride. Seat belts are most effective when passengers are sitting up straight and well back in their seats.
- Make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across your shoulder. The belt should be kept away from your neck, but not falling off your shoulder. Failure to do so could reduce the effect of protection in an accident.
- High-positioned lap belts and loose-fitting belts could cause death or serious injuries due to sliding under the lap belt during a collision. Keep the lap belt positioned on hips as low as possible.

■ Front seat belt height adjustment



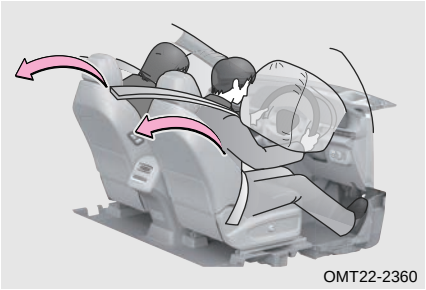
Adjust downward

1 Push seat belt adjustment button downward while pressing adjusting button.

Adjust upward

2 Directly push the seat belt adjustment button upwards.

Seat Belt Pretensioner


OMT22-2360

Seat belt pretensioner is designed to assist front airbag in the event of a severe impact.

- When sensor detects an unavoidable severe impact, retractor quickly tightens seat belt to tightly restrain occupant.
- Seat belt pretensioner may be activated even if there is no occupant in front seat.
- In the event of a minor impact or side impact, pretensioner may not activate.
- Seat belt pretensioners and airbags work together in collisions.
- When seat belt pretensioner is activated, it may make a working sound and release a small amount of non-toxic gas.
- The gas produced does not cause a fire and is generally harmless.
- Once the seat belt pretensioner is activated, the seat belt retractor will lock.

⚠ CAUTION

In some cases, it may prevent the seat belt pretensioner from working properly:

- Repair seat belt pretensioner or any assembly nearby.
- Modify suspension system.
- Modify front body section.
- Install grill guard or any other device to front body.

⚠ WARNING

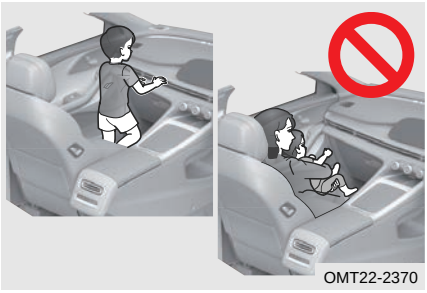
- Do not modify, remove, hit, open the seat belt pretensioner assembly, airbag sensor, and assembly wire. Failure to do so may prevent the seat belt pretensioner from being properly activated and cause the system to be accidentally operated and disabled, which may result in serious injury or death.
- If the pretensioner is activated, the airbag malfunction indicator on combination cluster will come on. In this case, the seat belt cannot be used again, make sure to replace it.

If any of the followings occur, there may be malfunction in airbag or seat belt pretensioner. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

- Vehicle is powered on, the airbag malfunction indicator on instrument cluster does not perform self-check or remains on;
- Airbag malfunction indicator comes on during driving;
- Seat belt cannot be retracted or pulled out due to malfunction or seat belt pretensioner activated;
- Seat belt pretensioner assembly or its surrounding area is damaged.

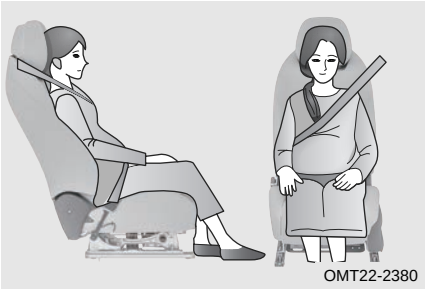
■ Methods and precautions for using seat belt by a child

The seat belts of your vehicle are principally designed for persons of adult size. Use a child restraint system (For details, refer to "Child Restraint System" in this section) appropriate for the child.


OMT22-2370

Do not allow children to stand or kneel on either front or rear seats. An unrestrained child could suffer serious injury during emergency braking or a collision. Also, do not let a child sit on an adult’s laps. Holding a child in arms cannot provide sufficient restraint.

■ Methods and precautions for using seat belt by a pregnant woman


OMT22-2380

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt properly. Women who are pregnant should position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips in the same manner as other occupants. Extend the shoulder belt completely over the shoulder and across the chest, avoid belt contact with the rounding of the abdominal area. If the seat belt is not fastened properly, not only the pregnant woman, but also the fetus could suffer serious injury as a result of sudden braking or a collision.

⚠ WARNING

- Inspect the seat belt system periodically. Check seatbelt for cuts, wear, and loose belt.
- Do not use a damaged seat belt and replace it with a new one. A damaged seat belt cannot protect a passenger from serious injury.
- If your vehicle has been involved in a serious accident and even if seat belt is not obviously damaged, please contact authorized service station for inspection and replace as needed.
- Do not attempt to install, remove, modify, disassemble or dispose of the seat belts. If there is any need above, have any necessary service carried out by authorized service station.
- Ensure that the belt tab and buckle are locked and the seat belt webbing is not twisted. If seat belt can not work properly, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

2-9. Child Restraint Systems

Child Restraint Systems

According to accident statistics, a child is safer sitting in the second row seat and properly restrained than child in front seat. Choose a child restraint system suitable for the vehicle, age and size of the child. (Vehicle seat belt meet international standards is designed according to body size of child over 1.5 m. If any under 1.5 m uses seat belt, the belt could hurt his/her neck seriously in case of an accident).

This instruction only provides installation instructions for child restraint systems (ISOFIX). For installation details, strictly follow the instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

⚠ WARNING

- We suggest use standard fixing device for child restraint system on the second row seat.
- Child restraint system should comply with the safety standards set by local regulations and laws. We will take no responsibility for an accident caused by using a child restraint system.
- For effective protection in accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained using a seat belt or a appropriate child restraint system installed on the second row seat depending on age and size of the child. Holding a child in the arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system.

Child Safety Seat Grouping

Child restraint systems should comply with local motor vehicle standards for child restraint systems and child safety prevention system (ECE R44/R129), generally, the verified child restraint system is applied a local certification label and also has an orange label after testing by ECE R44/R129 standard. There is information, such as weight group, ISOFIX level and license for child restraint system, on this label.

CRS Table

Seat position	Driver	Front Passenger		2nd row left	2nd row middle	2nd row right
		Passe-nger Airbag ON	Passe-nger Airbag OFF			
Seating position suitable for universal belted (YES/NO)	N/A	NO	YES	YES	YES	YES
i-Size seating position (YES/NO)	N/A	NO	NO	YES	NO	YES
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/ L2)	N/A	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO
Largest suitable rearwardfacing fixture (R1/ R2X/ R2/ R3)	N/A	NO	NO	R1/ R2X/ R2/R3	NO	R1/ R2X/ R2/R3
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X /F2/ F3)	N/A	NO	NO	F2X/F2/ F3	NO	F2X/F2/ F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/ B3)	N/A	NO	NO	B2/B3	NO	B2/B3

Note:

1. The child seat category is defined according to ECE R16/R44/R129, you can find the category of child seat on it's specification. The child restraint system must be appropriate to the age, weight and size of the child.
2. If it is absolutely necessary for you to install a child seat to the front passenger seat, be sure to turn passenger airbag off. Adjust front passenger seat to the highest and rearmost position before installing universal CRS on it.
3. It is forbidden to install a child seat with a support base or with a support leg on the middle seat of the 2nd row.
4. Only universal belted child restraint systems can be used on the middle seat of the 2nd row.

Child Restraint System Precautions

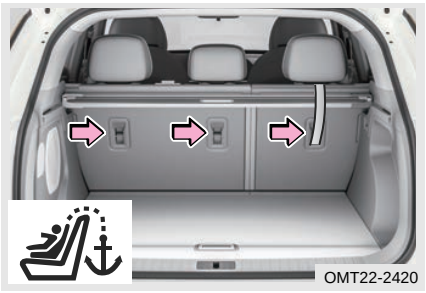
This sticker is attached to front passenger sun visor and used to remind you that the vehicle is equipped with front airbag (SRS). Observe the following precautions:

- When using a rearward facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat, the passenger airbag must be OFF, Refer to "- Enabling and Disabling Front Passenger Airbag".

- Never change the design of child restraint system fixing device or seat belt on the vehicle under any circumstances.

It is the driver's responsibility to comply to the instructions provided, and to the instructions provided by the CRS manufacturer.

Top Tether



This model is equipped with top tether strap anchorages on the back of the rear seats.

Before using a top tether strap, remove the seating position head restraint and luggage compartment cover. With the child restraint on the seat, attach the top tether strap to the anchorage, and tighten to remove all slack. Refer to instructions provided by the CRS manufacturer.

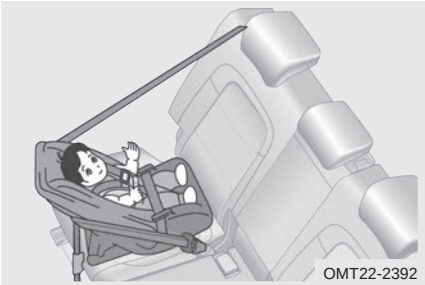
READ

- Ensure all removed head restraints are stowed safely.
- After correct installation of the child restraint and top tether, the luggage compartment cover can be re-installed.

WARNING

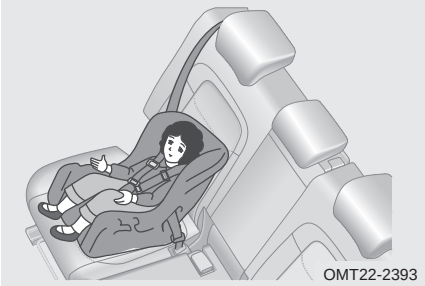
Ensure the top tether strap anchor is attached correctly. Incorrect installation may cause serious injury to the child.

■ Rearward-facing child restraint system


OMT22-2392

A rearward facing child restraint is installed to face to the rear of the vehicle. Only install a rearward facing child restraint on the front passenger seat if the airbag is OFF. It is recommended children use a rearward facing child restraint system up to 4 years old.

■ Forward-facing child restraint system


OMT22-2393

A forward facing child restraint is installed to face to the front of the vehicle. It is recommended children use a forward facing child restraint system when older than 4 years old.

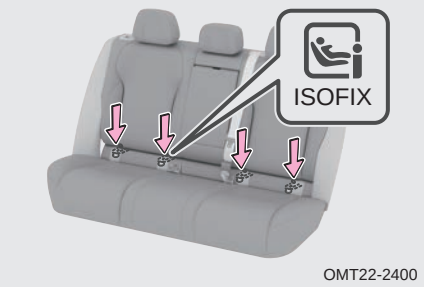
■ Booster seat child restraint system

OMT22-2394

For larger children that cannot fit in a child restraint system with a high back, they may occupy a second row outboard seat using a booster seat, either attached to the lower anchorage points or belted, as described in the instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

Installing Child Restraint Systems

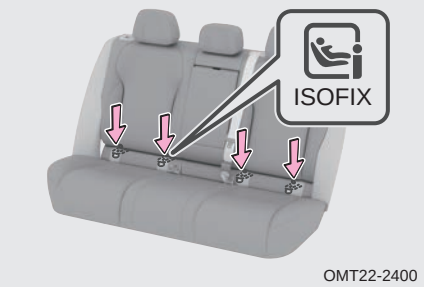
Child Restraint Systems



OMT22-2400

The rear outside seats are equipped with ISOFIX / i-Size anchorages. The anchorage locations are identified by a marking (see illustration) located on the seat back, directly above the associated anchorages. Please press the PUSH position to access the anchorages.

Installing Child Restraint Systems



OMT22-2400

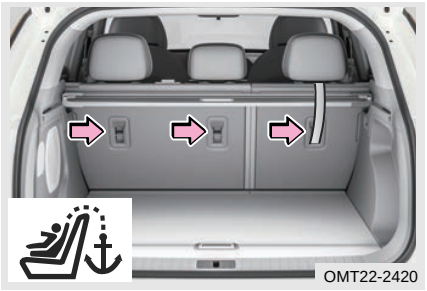
Step 1: Locate the ISOFIX anchorage; Please adjust the second row seat back angle to the front gear.

OMT22-2410

Step 2: Please press the PUSH position to access the anchorages;

Step 3: Place the child restraint system on the rear outboard seat;

Step 4: Attach the child restraint ISOFIX probe to the anchorage. Where necessary extend the child restraint support leg.


OMT22-2420

Step 5: Where a top tether strap is required, route, correctly attach and tighten the top tether strap to the top tether anchorage.

Note: If a luggage cover is present, it will need to be removed, to allow the upper tether access to the anchor point.

Note: Refer to the child restraint system instructions whether it needs to be secured by an upper tether belt.

READ

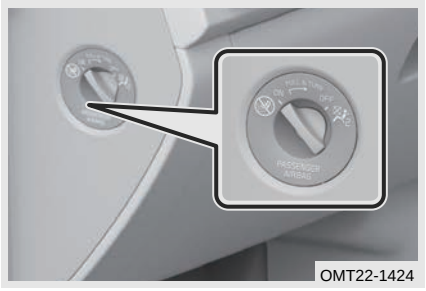
- If it interferes with the installation, the head restraint can be removed from the seat the child restraint system is installed on.
- After attaching the upper tether to the anchor point, be sure to tighten the tether and ensure it is secure. For the specific method of fixing and tightening upper tether of the child restraint system, strictly follow the instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.
- Before installing the child restraint system that uses an upper tether, the head restraint must first be removed. This will limit or prevent interaction of the head restraint with the upper tether. In addition, any luggage cover present must first be removed.

⚠ WARNING

- After installing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- It is recommended child restraint systems are installed on the rear outboard seats.
- Never fix more than one child restraint system to one set of anchor points.
- If anchor point device is damaged or overloaded during an accident, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
- If the driver's seat interferes with the correct installation of the child restraint system on the rear seat behind the driver seat, install the child restraint system on the rear seat behind the front passenger.
- Do not use child restraint system anchor bracket to secure items other than child restraint system. We will not be liable for any accident caused this way.
- If the child restraint system is not correctly fixed in place, the child or passengers may face serious injury or even death during a collision.
- If the child restraint system on the rear seat interferes with the front seat, after all correct adjustments, do not install the child restraint system in that seat position; The child and front passenger may face serious injury or even death during a collision.
- Whether the child restraint system is in use or not in use, it should always be secure and fixed properly to the seat; Do not place unsecure child restraint systems on any passenger seats.

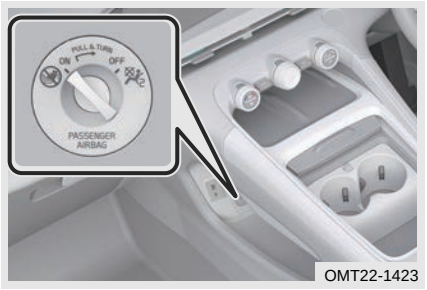
Enabling and Disabling Front Passenger Airbag (If Equipped)

Type A



The airbag enabling/disabling switch is located on the passenger side instrument panel and is visible when front passenger door is opened.

Type B



Airbag enabling/disabling switch is located below the auxiliary fascia console.

■ Disabling front passenger airbag

Turn the switch to OFF position while pulling the switch outward, the front passenger airbag is disabled and the disabling status indicator will come on.

■ Enabling front passenger airbag

Turn the switch from OFF to ON, re-enable the front passenger airbag and the enabling status indicator will come on. It is now safe to sit in the front passenger seat.

Airbag status indicator

1 Disabling status indication

2 Enabling status indication

⚠ WARNING

- Remember to subsequently enable the front passenger airbag when an adult occupant is seated in the front passenger seat. It is the driver's responsibility to confirm the passenger airbag status is correct for the occupant in the front passenger seat.
- In the event a rearward facing child restraint system needs to be installed on the front passenger seat, the front passenger airbag must be disabled. Otherwise, it may cause serious injury or even death to young children in the event of an accident.

Child Presence Detection (If Equipped)

As an auxiliary feature for the safety of children，this system is based on the active detection of millimeter wave radar .After the vehicle is powered off and

locked, it detects whether there is a child in the car. If there is child, the system alarms to alert customers and pedestrians around the vehicle，and send SMS and APP notifications to the owner reducing the likelihood of incidents caused by users forgetting their children.

You can temporary deactivation this feature in “Vehicle centre" ＞"Vehicle comfort"＞ "In-vehicle Child Presence Detection". After the temporary deactivation is enabled, the system will not detect whether there are children in the car after this journey is end and the car is locked.

The system also provides a delay detection option, when activated delay detection, lock the car will not immediately detect whether there are children in the car, but 9 minutes and 50 seconds after the lock of the car to activate the detection function. If the system detects a child in the vehicle, an alarm will be sent.

As an auxiliary safety function, Child Presence Detection (CPD) is mainly used for detecting and reminding you that children have been left behind in the rear row. Since there is a possibility that it will fail to detect or mis-detect the presence of children, it cannot be solely used for child protection. It is not recommended that you leave children alone in your vehicle.

Please return to the vehicle as soon as possible to take care of the children after receiving notifications via SMS or the mobile app, so as to make sure that the children are safe in the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING
Don ´t leave your children unaccompanied in the car, this can cause suffocation or heat stroke, it´s very dangerous

INTERIOR FUNCTION

3-1. Smart Key

Mechanical Key 75

Replacing Smart Key Battery..... 76

Keyless Entry 77

Remote Starting for Smart Key..... 81

3-2. Immobilizer System

Vehicle Arming..... 82

3-3. Door Locks

Door Lock Switch 84

3-4. Windows

Power Windows..... 86

Remote Control Window Function 88

Window Jam Protection Function 89

3-5. Panoramic Moon Roof

3-6. OTA Upgrade (If Equipped)

OTA Upgrade 92

3-7. Head Unit System

Head Unit View..... 95

Head Unit Control Button..... 96

Voice Recognition Function 97

Vehicle Setting..... 97

Phone-link..... 101

3-8. Automatic Air Conditioning System

Automatic Air Conditioning System..... 105

A/C Setting 110

Air Conditioning Heating Operation..... 110

Air Conditioning Cooling Operation..... 111

Air Outlets Airflow Control 113

3-9. Fragrance System (If Equipped)

Fragrance System..... 114

3-10. Wireless Charging

3-11. Remote Control System (If Equipped)

Remote Control System 118

Introduction of product functions..... 119

3-12. Power Outlet and USB

3-13. Cup Holders

3-14. Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors

3-15. Assist Grips

Passenger Assist Grips..... 132

Rear Center Armrest..... 133

3-16. Storage Space

Door Storage Boxes 133

Glove Box (If Equipped) 133

Auxiliary Fascia Console Storage Box 134

Seat Storage Bag..... 134

Luggage Compartment 135

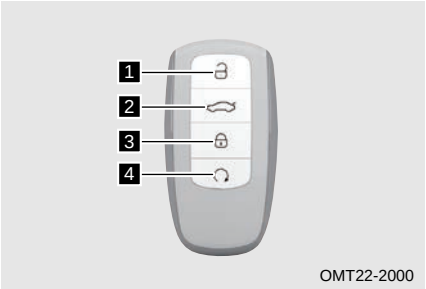
3-17.Front Compartment Cover

3-18.Power Back Door

3-19.Fuel Filler Door

3-1. Smart Key

Smart key is used to unlock/lock doors and open back door. The mechanical key built into the smart key can be used to unlock/lock doors in emergency.



1 Unlock button
2 Back door opener button
3 Lock button
4 Remote starting button

Remote control function is designed to unlock/lock doors within about 20 m (-within clear view) of the vehicle. When smart key cannot operate properly, it may be affected by the followings:

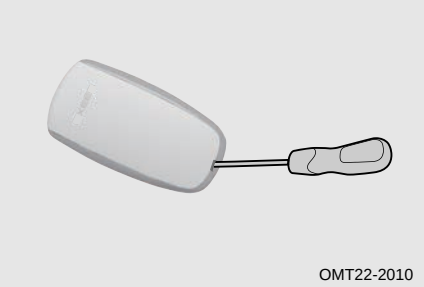
- The distance between vehicle and smart key is over 20 m.
- When approaching a TV tower, radio station, electric power plant, airport, railway station or other facilities that generate strong radio waves.
- When approaching a portable radio or other wireless communication devices with similar frequency to remote controller.
- When smart key is in contact with, or is covered by a metallic object.
- When smart key is placed near an electrical appliance (such as mobile phone or personal computer).
- When there are more than one smart keys being used nearby.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not change the transmitting frequency, increase the transmitter power (-including installation of the wireless RF power amplifier), or install an external or other transmitting antenna without permission.
- When using this product. it is forbidden to cause adverse interference to various legal wireless communications. In case of interference, immediately stop using and take measures to eliminate the interference before continuing to use it.
- This product is a low frequency radio device and can be interfered by various radio services or radiation from industrial, scientific and medical equipment.

Mechanical Key

When key battery power is low or smart key does not operate properly, take out mechanical key to unlock/lock doors.


OMT22-2010

Pry off smart key cover using a flathead screwdriver with the tip taped and take out mechanical key; After using, return it to original position to facilitate carrying and prevent loss.

Replacing Smart Key Battery

■ Replacing smart key battery

If the following occurs, the key battery power may be low or depleted:

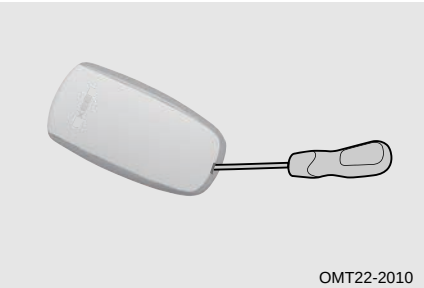
- The remote control distance gradually decreases.
- Remote control function does not work even there is no interference.
- Combination cluster prompts "Key battery power is low, please replace battery".

Smart key battery model: 3V-CR2032 lithium battery.

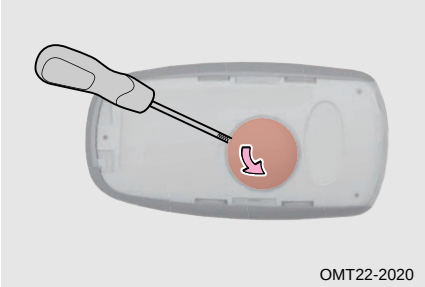
⚠ CAUTION

- There are some difficulties when replacing battery, so it may be damaged if replacing the battery by yourself. It is recommended to replace it at authorized service station.
- Only use the recommended battery type.
- Take special care to prevent children from swallowing the removed battery or other components.

■ Replacing key battery according to steps below


OMT22-2010

1. Pry off smart key cover using a flathead screwdriver with the tip taped and take out mechanical key;


OMT22-2020

2. Pry off battery in smart key using a flathead screwdriver with the tip taped and install new battery with the positive (+) side up;
3. Install smart key in place in the reverse order of removal;
4. After replacing the battery, check if the smart key operates properly.

READ

If smart key still cannot work properly, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

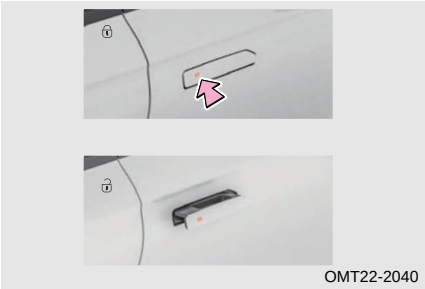
Used lithium battery cannot be handled as general household rubbish, please handle used battery according to the local regulations and provisions regarding environmental protection.

CAUTION

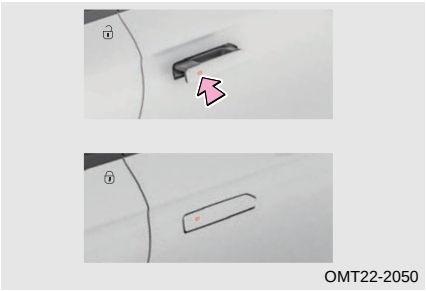
- Make sure that positive and negative terminals of battery are placed correctly.
- Do not bend electrode and terminal when installing battery.
- Make sure your hands are dry and keep away from water when replacing the battery.
- Do not touch new battery with oily hand. Failure to do so may cause battery corrosion.
- Do not touch or move any components inside the smart key, or its functions may not work properly.

Keyless Entry

Touch to unlock/lock doors


OMT22-2040

Bring smart key and touch the sensing area of hidden door handle. After system recognizes unlocking signal, the hidden door handle extends automatically, then turn signal light flashes twice and the door is unlocked.


OMT22-2050

Bring smart key and touch the sensing area of hidden door handle. After system recognizes locking signal, the hidden door handle retracts automatically, then turn signal light flashes once and the door is locked.

READ

When the head unit is set to independent driver door unlocking, only the driver side hidden door handle extends automatically after vehicle is unlocked.

CAUTION

- If smart key is left in vehicle, keyless entry function will not work.
- When unlocking the door, make sure there is sufficient space on the side of vehicle. Insufficient opening space may damage the hidden door handle.
- Do not put smart key together with electronic equipment (computer, cordless mouse, etc.), doing so may cause failure in sensing unlock/lock.

WARNING

Before hidden door handle retracts automatically, make sure that the area is cleared and that no body part of any person nearby is in a position that may be pinched.

NFC card key unlocking/locking

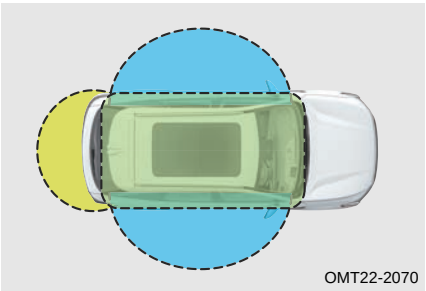
OMT22-2060

Bring NFC card key near the NFC mark on right outside rear view mirror. After a few seconds, vehicle can be unlocked/locked. The hidden door handle will automatically extend after unlocking successfully or automatically retract after locking successfully to unlock/lock the door.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not bend NFC card key with excessive force.
- Do not place the NFC card key in a high temperature environment (such as the dashboard).
- Do not place the NFC card key with other hard objects to prevent wear.
- Do not place the NFC card key on NFC sensing area with a phone that has turned on NFC function.
- When unlocking/locking with NFC card key, attach the card to NFC mark on outside rear view mirror for at least 1 ~ 2 s to realize unlocking/locking function.
- Do not use NFC card key with anything that will cut off electromagnetic waves (such as metal seals, metal mobile phone back cases, etc.).
- NFC card key is a key equipped for the vehicle based on NFC communication mode. In order to ensure the safety of your vehicle, please keep it properly. If you lose it, it is recommended to report the loss to authorized service station immediately and re-match the card key.

Smart key detection area



Opening back door

Take a step back and open the back door when smart key is within effective range (yellow area) of back door outside low-frequency antenna.

Starting vehicle or switching power mode

Start vehicle or switch power mode when smart key is within effective range (green area) of interior front low-frequency antenna.

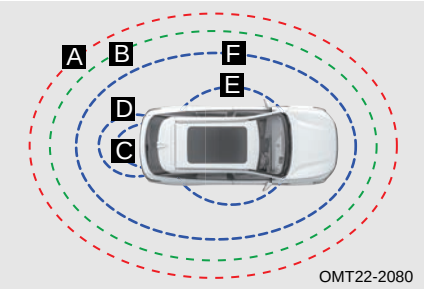
Unlocking/locking doors

Unlock/lock the doors when smart key is within effective range (blue area) of door high performance low-frequency antenna.

The system may not work properly in the following conditions:

- When smart key is too close to the window or roof with doors locked.
- Smart key is in luggage compartment.
- Check if the smart key is placed together with strong electromagnetic interference sources.

Smart key sensing function



A Welcome lights OFF area (about 3.5 m away)

If you approach A with carrying smart key, the welcome lights will go out automatically.

B Welcome lights ON area (within about 3 m)

If you approach area B with carrying smart key, the welcome lights will come on automatically.

C Back door opening area (within about 0.5 m)

If you approach area C with carrying smart key, the system automatically recognizes the validity of smart key. After waiting for about 2 seconds at area C, the turn signal light flashes to inform that it is forbidden to leave area D (about 1.2 m away). The power back door will automatically open after turn signal light flashes several times.

E Unlocking area (within about 1.5 m)

If you approach area E with carrying smart key, the doors will unlock automatically.

F Locking area (about 2 m away)

If you approach F with carrying smart key, the doors will lock automatically.

READ
The key sensing back door opening needs to be set in head unit system. For details, refer to "Head Unit System".

⚠ CAUTION

- Smart key sensing function will be turned off after the vehicle is locked for 3 days (always being locked). Restarting the vehicle will restore the sensing function.
- If you leave area F when carrying key, turn signal lights do not flash and horn sound is not heard (successful arming prompt), inspect if the vehicle is locked to avoid locking failure resulting from misoperation or unsatisfied condition.
- The sensing lock function can be operated only when vehicle is powered off, four doors, hood and back door are closed and no smart key is placed inside the vehicle.
- After smart key sensing active lock function is activated, if smart key is near the vehicle all the time, vehicle will lock automatically for more than 15 minutes, if the key is still near the vehicle for another 15 minutes, for the purpose of power saving, smart key sensing function will be turned off temporarily, the function can only be activated after opening any door or back door and then closing all doors and back door.

■ Alarm hint

For details, refer to "Vehicle Arming" in this section.

Remote Starting for Smart Key

With vehicle in normal arming mode, long press remote starting button or lock button on the smart key for more than 3 seconds to start the vehicle remotely, and A/C operates automatically at the same time; The vehicle will automatically shut off and exit remote mode after 10 minutes of remote starting.

READ

Following conditions should be met when starting vehicle remotely using smart key: Vehicle is powered off, all doors are closed, gear position is in P, brake pedal is not depressed, no key is left in vehicle, vehicle battery is normal, fuel amount is normal (low fuel level warning indicator does not come on), and oil pressure is normal.

3-2. Immobilizer System

■ Engine immobilizer system

Smart key has a built-in transponder chip. If the smart key is not pre-matched into engine immobilizer module, the built-in chip will prevent engine from starting.

Conditions that may cause system malfunction:

- Smart key is in contact with a metallic object.
- Smart key is too close to or contacts smart key (key with a built-in transponder chip) of another vehicle.

> ⚠ CAUTION
>
> - Do not modify or remove engine immobilizer system. Otherwise, system may not operate properly.
> - Do not match the key by yourself, as this may affect the normal operation of system.
> - If engine cannot start but starter can operate normally, it may be due to the interference of immobilizer system. For details, refer to "If Your Vehicle Will not Start Normally".

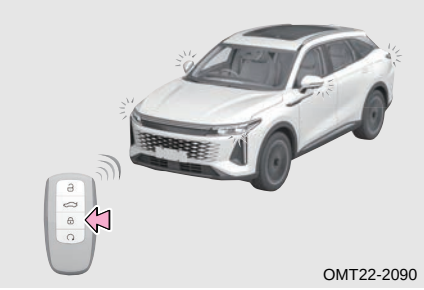
■ Vehicle anti-theft system

When vehicle is in arming state and illegal entry is detected, the system will send sound-light alarm, alerting owner that the vehicle is in an illegal entry state. For details, refer to "Vehicle Arming" in this section.

> ⚠ CAUTION
>
> To prevent unexpected triggering of vehicle anti-theft system and vehicle theft, before leaving the vehicle, check that nobody is in vehicle, all doors and windows are closed properly and vehicle is armed successfully.

Vehicle Arming

Arming operation


OMT22-2090

- Perform vehicle arming by following operations:

1. Press lock button on smart key.
2. Approach the vehicle while carrying smart key on your person, and touch sensing area of hidden door handle.
3. If you leave vehicle with carrying smart key, the doors will lock automatically.
4. Lock the vehicle through NFC card sensing.

- Successful arming prompt:

Turn signal lights flash once and anti-theft horn sounds once.

- Successful arming condition:

Vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, hood, four doors and back door are closed, there is no smart key left in vehicle.

- Unsuccessful arming:

  When the vehicle is in READY, hood, four doors or back door is not closed, vehicle cannot enter arming state.
- Unsuccessful arming prompt: Turn signal light flashes twice.

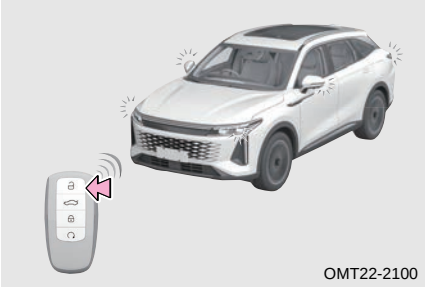
READ
Arming prompt needs to be set in head unit system (for details, refer to "-Head Unit System").

CAUTION
• When the vehicle is in READY, vehicle arming cannot be set. • When only driver side door is not closed, the vehicle arming cannot be set. • If back door and hood are closed and any door is not closed, the vehicle cannot be locked and vehicle arming is not set successfully. • If four doors are closed, hood or back door is not closed, only all the doors are locked and vehicle arming is not set successfully.

■ Secondary arming mode

After disarming, if hood, four doors and back door are not operated, the vehicle will lock automatically and enter arming state after 30 seconds.

Disarming operation



OMT22-2100

- Disarm by following operations:

1. Press unlock button on smart key;
2. Approach the vehicle while carrying smart key on your person, and touch sensing area of hidden door handle;
3. If you approach the vehicle when carrying smart key, the doors will automatically unlock.
4. Unlock the vehicle through NFC card sensing.

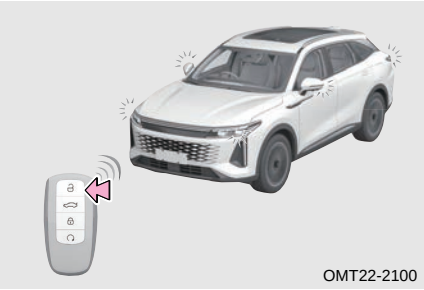
- Successful disarming prompt: Turn signal lights flash twice.

READ

- When vehicle anti-theft system is in alarm state, if unlock button on smart key is pressed or vehicle starts successfully, the vehicle anti-theft system can be deactivated.
- After disarming, if any of the hood, four doors and back door is opened, the vehicle will exit secondary arming mode.

Alarm mode

When the vehicle is in arming state and illegal entry is detected (for example: Any door or back door is opened illegally, alarm will be activated), the vehicle will enter alarm state.



OMT22-2100

- Alarm mode:
When illegal entry is detected, the vehicle enters cyclic alarm mode, anti-theft horn intermittently sounds and turn signal lights flash.
- Deactivating alarm:
When the vehicle is in alarm mode, press unlock button on smart key to deactivate alarm.

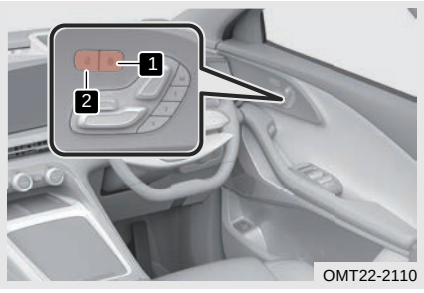
CAUTION

- If the doors are locked using mechanical key, the vehicle anti-theft function cannot be enabled. Therefore, it is recommended to lock doors using smart key.
- After locking doors with smart key, the vehicle anti-theft system will be triggered if front right door is unlocked and opened by mechanical key.

3-3. Door Locks

Door Lock Switch

Unlocking/locking doors



OMT22-2110

1 Lock button

2 Unlock button

In the vehicle, press unlock/lock button to unlock/lock doors.

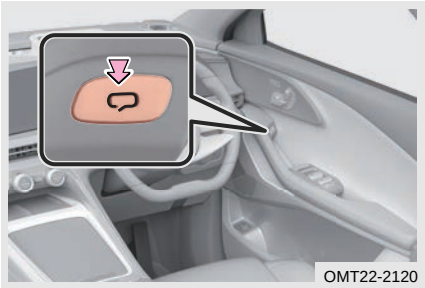
When vehicle speed is more than 15 km/h, the doors will lock automatically.

READ

ON/OFF of auto lock needs to be set in head unit. For details, refer to "Head Unit System".

Opening door

■ Electronic opening (if equipped)


OMT22-2120

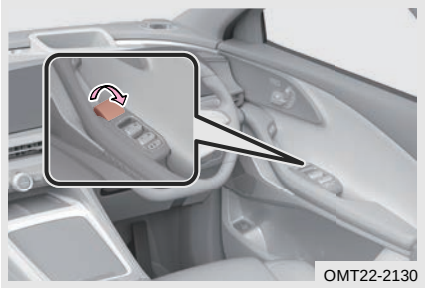
If door unlock switch is pressed while door is in unlocking state, door opens automatically.

If door unlock switch is pressed to unlock the door for the first time while door is in locking state, press the door unlock switch again and door opens automatically.

READ

When vehicle battery is depleted or electronic opening is in failure, door can be opened mechanically.

■ Mechanical opening


OMT22-2130

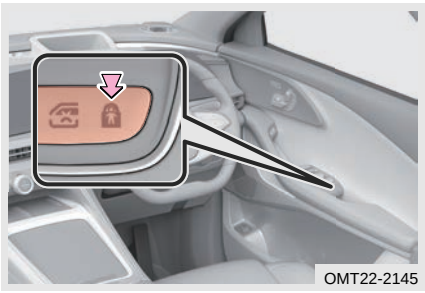
For vehicle with electronic opening, pull the inner door opening handle upward once to open the door mechanically when the door is in unlocking/locking state; for vehicle without electronic opening, pull the inner door opening handle upward twice to open the door mechanically (the first time is to unlock the door and the second time is to open the door).

WARNING

Check if there is vehicle or pedestrian near the front or rear of the door before opening to prevent injury.

Child lock

■ Electronic child lock



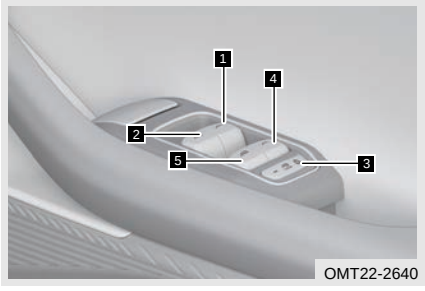
Press " " switch, passenger side window OFF switch indicator comes on and the electronic child lock is locked, as well as disable passenger side window switch. Press " " switch again to cancel this function and the indicator goes off.

⚠ WARNING

- Make sure that all doors are closed before driving.
- When a child is seated on rear seat, always activate the child lock to prevent rear door being opened accidentally while driving.
- In case of a collision, if there is someone in vehicle and child lock is locked, remember that the rear door can only be opened from outside.
- In hot weather, if vehicle stalls and all doors and windows are closed, do not allow any animal or child in vehicle alone. Otherwise, even if it is a short time, it may cause serious injury or even death due to sharp temperature rise.

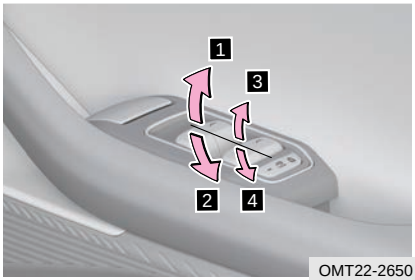
3-4. Windows

Power Windows



Driver door power window switches are as follows:

1 Front right power window switch
2 Front left power window switch
3 Passenger window OFF switch
4 Rear right power window switch
5 Rear left power window switch



OMT22-2650

Driver door power window switches are as follows:

1 Pull the switch to top to make window go up automatically; press it again to stop moving the window.

2 Push the switch to bottom to make window go down automatically; Press the switch again to stop window moving.

3 Pull the switch upwards by one level to make window go up; release the switch to stop moving the window.

4 Push the switch downwards by one level to make window go down; Release the switch to stop window moving.

READ

- Only vehicles with jam protection function have one-touch window up function.
- During window auto up or auto down, window auto up or auto down operation will stop when pressing power window switch (regardless of up or down).
- When driving over roads with potholes or uneven surfaces, gravity may affect door system unexpectedly. In this case, the window may reverse and go down while rising by one-touch window up function. This is a small probability event, which is normal.

CAUTION

- After leaving vehicle in low temperature environment for a long time, when operating window switch, glass may not be fully open or close at one time. In this case, release the switch and then operate again, repeat 3-5 cycles to return normal.
- Take extra care when closing windows, failure to do so may be caught and injured; For models with window jam protection function, jam protection function can be activated in jam protection area to protect passenger. However, for the thin or soft objects, jam protection function may be not activated, resulting in serious injury.

■ Passenger window OFF switch

Press "" passenger window OFF switch, passenger window OFF switch indicator comes on and disable passenger window switch. Press the switch again to cancel the passenger window OFF and the indicator goes off.

READ

- Passenger window OFF switch is used to disable passenger side power window switch function. Passenger side windows can only be operated by driver side power window switches after disabling. It is recommended to use this function when there is a child in vehicle.
- At the moment of starting engine, window up and down operation will be suspended to provide large current for engine starting.

WARNING

- To avoid personal injury, it is driver's responsibility to guide all passengers to operate power window up/down switch and especially to prevent children from using it incorrectly. Ensure that the vehicle is powered off or non-mechanical device is closed when leaving the vehicle.
- Before using remote control up/down window function, please take extra care. Remote control up/down window function can be used only when the vehicle can be seen clearly and make sure that passengers cannot be caught by window.

Remote Control Window Function

Remote control window down function

With vehicle powered off and all doors closed, press unlock button on smart key at least 1.5 seconds, four window glass will go down automatically. If the button is pressed in this process, window glass will stop going down.

Remote control window up function

With vehicle powered off and all doors closed, press lock button on smart key, the vehicle will enter arming state, four door windows and four door window glasses will go up automatically. Unlock/lock doors in automatic window up process and windows will stop moving.

READ

With vehicle powered off and all doors closed, four door window glasses will go up automatically when vehicle enters arming state (keyless entry locking, sensing locking, remote locking, etc. trigger arming operation).

CAUTION

- In process of window remote control down, press and hold unlock button on smart key. If remote signal interrupts due to jitter (including hand jitter and electromagnetic interference), the process will stop.
- If abnormal closing occurs during remote control one-touch window up, turn signal lights flash once and horn continuously sounds 5 times to alarm user that window may not close normally.

Window Jam Protection Function

Jam protection function

When jam protection function operates normally, during auto window up or remote control one-touch window up, if obstacle resistance is encountered in jam protection area and resistance exceeds a certain value, window will stop rising and goes down slightly. To close window, move away obstacle and operate the switch again.

Manual learning function

If auto window up function and jam protection function do not operate normally, perform the following steps to restore function. Make sure that there are no obstacles within window range during learning.

1. Vehicle power-on;
2. Operate window switch manually to fully close the window and hold the switch for 2 seconds, then release the switch;
3. Operate window switch manually to fully open the window and hold the switch for 2 seconds, then release the switch;
4. Try to operate auto window up function;
5. If window cannot close automatically, please repeat the above steps to set.

Smart key jam protection learning function

This function can be set with smart key remote control one-touch window up function. Window will go down to bottom, then go up to top, window can be closed normally, setting is successful.

READ

If automatic window up function cannot resume after repeating the above steps, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

⚠ CAUTION

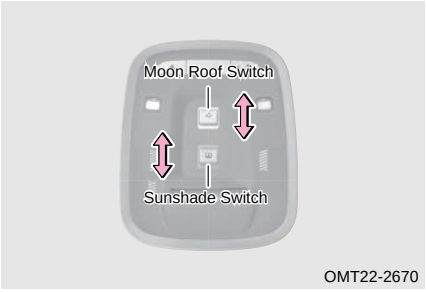
- Always keep window closing area free of obstacles when closing window, even thought it is equipped with jam protection function. Otherwise, if there is a thin object and system cannot sense it, jam protection will not work. If someone’s hand or finger is caught, extremely serious injury may be caused.
- Jam protection function is a kind of window safety protection function. Never try to activate it by repeatedly using various objects, improper methods or even with some part of body. Failure to do so may damage window regulation system mechanism or cause accidental personal injury.
- If battery cable is disconnected and reconnected, automatic window up function and jam protection function will not work.

Overheat protection function

To protect motor, if window up-down operation is performed continuously, overheat protection function actively disables the control of corresponding window switch. After motor temperature returns to normal, it recovers. This function will not affect the use of other normal window up-down functions.

3-5. Panoramic Moon Roof

There are many ways to open/close moon roof, such as by moon roof switch, voice, remote control.



Opening/closing sunshade automatically

1. Push sunshade switch backward to slide sunshade to middle position. Push the sunshade switch again to slide sunshade to full open position.
2. When sunshade is in full open condition, push sunshade switch forward to slide the sunshade to middle position. Push the sunshade switch again to slide sunshade to full closed position.

Moon roof auto tilting up/OFF

1. Push moon roof switch backward to tilt up the moon roof.
2. When moon roof is tilted up, push moon roof switch forward to close moon roof or directly push the sunshade switch forward to close the moon roof and sunshade at the same time.

Moon roof auto ON/OFF

1. Push the moon roof switch backward, the moon roof will slide open. Push the switch backward again, the moon roof slides open to maximum position.
2. When moon roof is open, push moon roof switch forward to close moon roof or directly push the sunshade switch forward to close the moon roof and sunshade at the same time.

■ Moon roof remote control function

- With vehicle powered off and all doors closed, long press unlock button on smart key, and panoramic moon roof opens automatically.
- With vehicle powered off, all doors closed and panoramic moon roof not closed, press lock button on smart key, and panoramic moon roof closes automatically.

READ

- For details about remote moon roof control, refer to "Remote Control System".
- Moon roof switch and sunshade switch are designed in 2 levels, first level: Manually control opening range; Second level: Automatically control opening range, please select proper level according to your needs.
- With vehicle powered off, and all doors closed, the panoramic moon roof closes automatically when vehicle enters arming state (keyless entry locking, sensing locking, remote locking, etc. trigger arming operation).

CAUTION

- When moon roof is frozen or covered with snow, forcibly opening moon roof will damage the moon roof glass and the motor.
- If there is water on moon roof after raining, always wipe off any water or tilt moon roof up to drain the water away before opening it, to prevent water from flowing into cab.
- Regularly clean the dust and debris in moon roof rails and strips with water. After vehicle washing or raining, completely wipe the water on the moon roof glass before using.
- If vehicle is parked under a tree or in a harsh environment, the moon roof drain hole may be blocked by leaves and dust. Check and clean it regularly.

WARNING

Before closing moon roof, please take extra care. The vehicle should be seen clearly and make sure that passengers cannot be caught by it.

3-6. OTA Upgrade (If Equipped)

OTA Upgrade

OTA upgrade is used to upgrade the vehicle system, so that you can have a better driving experience.

Preparation before upgrading

■ Upgrade conditions:

1. Upgrade package download requires a mobile network to complete.
2. The entire upgrade process requires parking and making sure the vehicle is in a safe area.
3. It is recommended not to use head unit system in the process of upgrade, so that head unit system is in OTA upgrade screen.
4. OTA upgrade takes a while. Ensure that there is sufficient time before the upgrade. Otherwise, the upgrade may fail.

READ

OTA upgrade takes a long time. The upgrade time of single controller is tens of minutes. The specific upgrade time is subject to the upgrade of real vehicle. Please make sure that there is sufficient time before the upgrade, otherwise the upgrade may fail.

■ Method for entering vehicle upgrade

Start the vehicle, shift the vehicle to P, if there is a new version of the upgrade, the system will automatically pop up the upgrade prompt box. Click "View" button on head unit display to enter the vehicle upgrade screen.

Click "Vehicle Upgrade" button on head unit display to enter the vehicle upgrade screen.

View contents of this upgrade through upgrade details.

READ

- Driver can upgrade immediately or make an appointment according to his/her own needs.
- Click "Ignore" button on head unit display or do not click "View" or "Ignore" button in the countdown to exit the vehicle upgrade, and this prompt window will pop up again when the vehicle restarts.

Upgrade mode introduction

Upgrade mode includes upgrade now mode and appointment upgrade mode. After entering the vehicle upgrade main screen, there are two operation buttons: "Upgrade Now" and "Appointment Upgrade".

■ Upgrade now

Click upgrade now to enter disclaimer screen, which informs the owner of upgrade terms and statements, then click agree.

1. Select and click "Upgrade Now" button to upgrade the vehicle immediately.
2. Click upgrade now to enter disclaimer screen, which informs the owner of upgrade terms and statements, then click agree.
3. Check the vehicle status after agreeing to the upgrade terms and statements.

READ

- After the vehicle status meets upgrade conditions, a prompt is displayed indicating that the vehicle is entering the upgrade mode. After the vehicle enters the upgrade mode, the user cannot drive or use the vehicle.
- After conditions required for the upgrade are met, the system automatically enter the next step. If the system detects that the vehicle does not meet the precondition for the upgrade, a prompt is displayed indicating that conditions are not met. Perform operations as prompted to make the vehicle meet conditions for the upgrade.
- After entering the upgrade preparation screen, and the vehicle will enter the upgrade mode. If you fail to enter the upgrade mode, the pop-up box on the screen will prompt "Failed to enter upgrade mode". Please operate according to the prompt.
- During upgrade with vehicle power-on, the vehicle will first enter OTA upgrade mode. If OTA upgrade mode fails, driver will be prompted that the upgrade mode is failed. Click "OK" button and pop-up box disappears. If "OK" button is not clicked, the "Failed to enter upgrade mode" prompt will be displayed again after the vehicle is powered on.
- When all controllers are successfully upgraded, a prompt is displayed indicating that the upgrade is successful and the vehicle is being powered off. After a short pause, the system automatically powers off. If the power-off fails, the user manually performs power-off and restart the vehicle.
- After the vehicle is successfully powered off, the system exits upgrade mode. If the upgrade mode exiting fails, follow the instructions and contact authorized service station to check your vehicle.

■ Appointment upgrade

Click appointment upgrade to enter disclaimer screen, which informs the owner of upgrade terms and statements, then click agree.

1. After clicking "Agree", enter setting window of appointment time and select the setting time. The appointment upgrade supports an appointment time setting within 24 hour.
2. After the appointment time is set successfully, it will prompt that the appointment is successful. Click "OK" to return to the main screen and the

appointment time can be seen. After the appointment time is set and the appointment is successful, please power off the vehicle, make people leave the vehicle and lock the vehicle, the vehicle is in sleep status.

3. After the appointment time is reached, the vehicle is woken up and upgrade precondition detection is carried out.
4. After the appointment time is reached and the vehicle status meets the upgrade conditions, the vehicle enters the upgrade mode, and the user cannot drive and use the vehicle.

READ

- If the scheduled upgrade time is not set successfully, a prompt is displayed indicating that the appointment failed. Select the appointment time again.
- If the vehicle is powered off, is in arming state and is not in the charge/discharge state, the system automatically enters the upgrade mode. If the precondition for upgrade are not met, the system exits upgrade process and prompts you to upgrade the vehicle again after the next startup.

Upgrade result prompt

■ Upgrade succeeded

When all controllers are successfully upgraded, a prompt is displayed indicating that the upgrade is successful and the vehicle is being powered off. After a short pause, the head unit display automatically powers off. If the power-off fails, the user manually performs power-off and restart the vehicle.

After the vehicle is successfully powered off, the system exits upgrade mode. If the upgrade mode exiting fails, follow the instructions and contact authorized service station to check your vehicle.

■ Upgrade not completed

When a controller fails to upgrade and the rollback is successful, it will indicate that the upgrade has not been completed. Contact authorized service station to check your vehicle.

■ Upgrade failed

When a controller fails to upgrade and the rollback fails, it will prompt that the upgrade is failed. Contact authorized service station to check your vehicle.

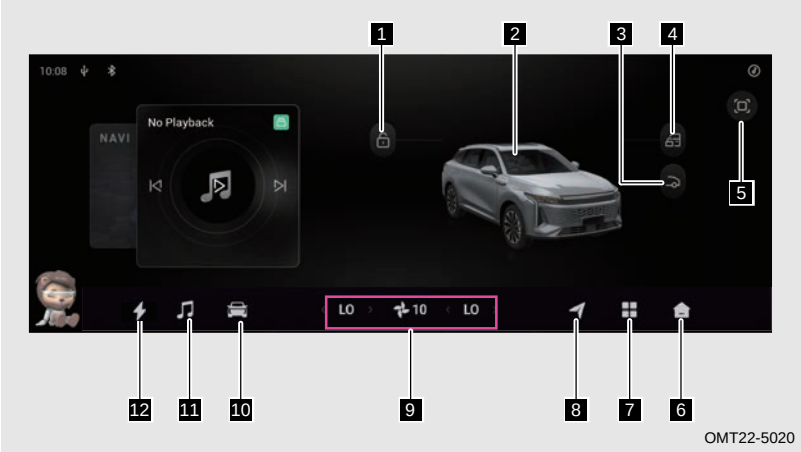
Upgrade risk and countermeasures

If any abnormal problems occur during the upgrade, perform the following operations:

1. Vehicle power is switched to OFF mode;
2. Make the person and key leave the vehicle, lock the vehicle.
3. Wait for 15 minutes, restart the vehicle, and perform OTA upgrade again. If the problem is still not resolved or OTA upgrade fails, have any service carried out by authorized service station.

3-7. Head Unit System

Head Unit View



1 Door lock button

Click to unlock/lock doors.

2 Vehicle status

With the opening of door, back door, hood and moon roof, the current status is dynamically displayed.

3 Power back door button

Click to open/close the power back door.

4 Passenger window OFF button/electronic child lock button

Click to disable passenger window and unlock electronic child lock

Quick button

Click to enter the quick operation screen.

6 Home page button

Click to return to system main screen.

7 App center button

Click to enter App center screen.

8 NAVI button

Click to enter navigation system.

9 Air conditioning temperature and airflow volume adjustment button

Click to adjust air conditioning temperature and airflow volume.

10 Vehicle setting button

Click to enter the vehicle setting screen for relevant function settings.

11 Multimedia button

Click to enter multimedia.

12 New energy setting button

Click to enter the new energy setting.

READ

- For details about head unit system, please refer to electronic "User Manual" attached with head unit.
- Some models of radio support DAB function.

Head Unit Control Button

Function switching button: Short press this button to switch between the last 50 km - since reset - tire pressure display - navigation - energy flow cycle.

Voice recognition button: Short press to wake up the voice recognition function; Long press to wake up the voice assistant (It is necessary to connect with phone).

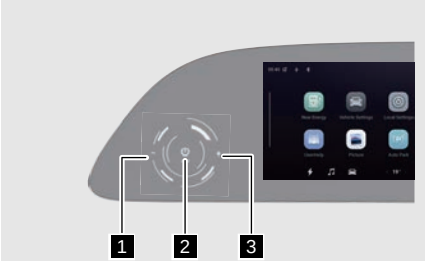
Volume + button: Short press to increase volume.

Volume - button: Short press to decrease volume.

Left switching button: Short press to switch to previous track in music mode; Short press to switch to previous station in radio mode; Hang up while calling.

Right switching button: Short press to switch to next track in music mode; Short press to switch to next station in radio mode; Answer the call while calling.

OK button: Short press to pause when music/radio is playing; Long press to reset mileage on since reset interface; Long press to switch to the full-screen or half-screen map in the navigation interface.



OMT22-5025

1 Volume - button

Click to decrease volume.

2 Power button

Short press to turn on/off head unit system; Long press to restart the system.

3 Volume + button

Click to increase volume.

Voice Recognition Function

Voice recognition function can control the functions (such as navigation, phone, window, moon roof, air conditioning, power back door) by voice, so that you can have a better experience while driving.

Voice recognition function can be enabled using the following methods when head unit is turned on:

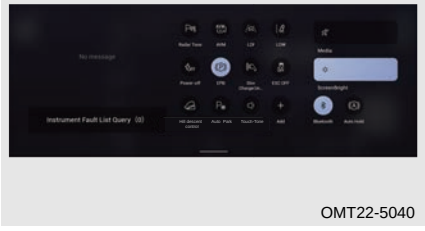
- Short press the voice button on steering wheel to wake up the voice recognition function.
- Speak the wake words directly and perform voice recognition.

Vehicle Setting

READ

The setting items are different depending on the configuration of the vehicle. Please refer to the actual vehicle configuration.

Quick operation


OMT22-5040

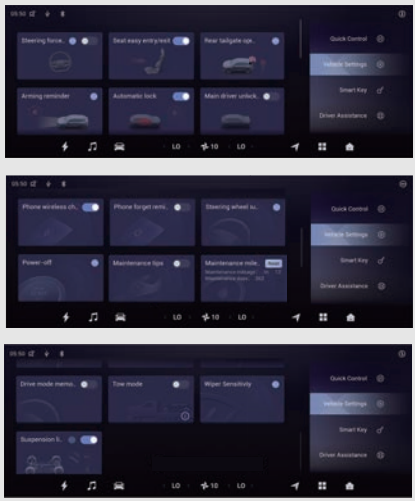
Perform slide down operation on the head unit to enter quick operation interface. Then you can perform volume control, screen brightness control, Bluetooth, personal hotspot; And turn on/off radar prompt sound, panoramic view, auto hold switch; Vehicle power off and appointment charging and other settings as well as check the instrument cluster malfunction list.

Quick control

OMT22-5050

- Switch among ECO (economic mode)/NORMAL (normal mode)/ SPORT (sport mode)/SNOW (- snow mode)/MUD (mud mode)/ SAND (sand mode)/OFFROAD (off-road mode).
- Power mode: HEV mode / EV mode / EV + mode.
- Window: Disable ON/OFF of passenger side window/electronic child lock (if equipped).
- Door lock: Unlocking/locking doors.
- Moon roof: Opening/closing.
- Back door: Opening/closing.

Vehicle settings

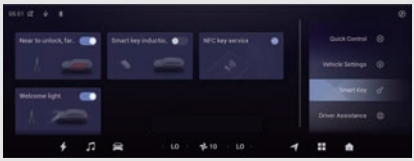


OMT22-5060

- Steering power linked driving: ON/ OFF.
- Easy seat entry/exit: ON/OFF.
- Back door opening height setting: 50 ~ 100%.
- Arming prompt: Light and horn, light.
- Auto lock: ON/OFF.
- Independent driver door unlocking: ON/OFF.
- Phone wireless charging setting: ON/OFF.
- Phone forgetting reminder: ON/ OFF.
- Steering wheel button "☆" customizing: Vehicle setting, driving recorder snapshot, rear view mirror adjusting, HUD adjusting, sound source switching, headrest speaker mode switching.
- Vehicle power-off: ON/OFF.
- Maintenance reminder: ON/OFF.
- Maintenance mileage reset: Reset the maintenance mileage.
- Driving mode memory: ON/OFF.

- Towing mode: ON/OFF.
- Wiper sensitivity setting: 1 - 4 levels.
- Suspension linked driving: ON/OFF.

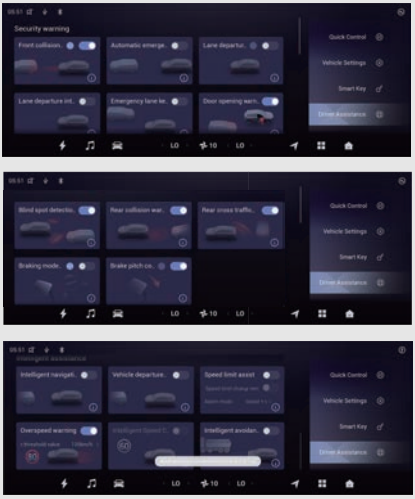
Smart key



OMT22-5070

- Approach unlocking and away locking: ON/OFF.
- Key sensing back door opening: ON/OFF.
- NFC key service: Configure my key.
- Approach welcome: ON/OFF.

Driver assistance



OMT22-5080

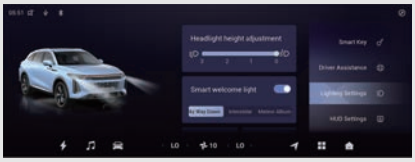
[Security warning

- Front collision alert system: ON/OFF.
- Automatic emergency braking system: ON/OFF.
- Lane departure alert: ON/OFF.
- Lane departure intervention: ON/OFF.
- Emergency lane keeping: ON/OFF.
- Door open warning: ON/OFF.
- Blind spot detection: ON/OFF.
- Rear approach alert: ON/OFF.
- Rear cross traffic alert: ON/OFF.
- Fatigue driving reminder: ON/OFF.
- Brake feel association: ON/OFF.
- Brake tilt control: ON/OFF.

[Intelligent assistance]

- Intelligent cruise control exit reminder: ON/OFF.
- Speed limit assist: ON/OFF. Perform over speed alarm setting after turning off speed limit assist.
- Intelligent speed control system: ON/OFF.
- Traffic sign recognition system: ON/OFF.
- Intelligent high beam assist: ON/OFF.
- Intelligent avoidance system: ON/OFF.

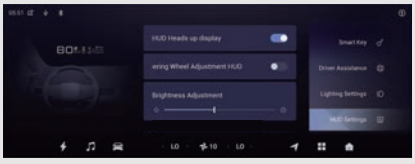
Light setting



OMT22-5090

- Headlight leveling adjusting: Slide to adjust the headlight leveling.
- Intelligent welcome light: ON/OFF; Galaxy dawn/Interstellar/meteor album can be set after it turns on.
- Music rhythm: ON/OFF.
- Intelligent high beam system: ON/OFF.
- Headlight delay: ON/OFF.

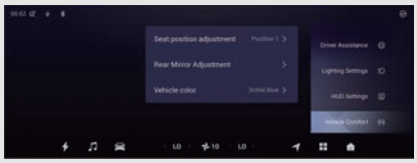
HUD setting



OMT22-5100

- It turns HUD head up display ON/OFF, and set brightness, height, information display of head up display after being turned ON.

Vehicle comfort



OMT22-5120

- Seat position adjustment: Adjust seat position and set seat memory position.
- Rear view mirror adjustment: ON/OFF of outside rear view mirror automatic folding when locking vehicle; Rear view mirror automatic adjustment when reversing (off/low/mid/high); Set the outside rear view mirror memory position.
- Belt comfort switch function: ON/OFF.
- Driver seat belt vibration alert: ON/OFF.
- Vehicle color: New khaki white, universe gray, technology gray, orchid blue, astrotricha green, pine-soot ink black.

Ambient light

It sets ON/OFF of ambient light; Ambient light mode options: Monochromatic ambient/stepless color toning/multiple color ambient/driving mode/speed mode/music mode.

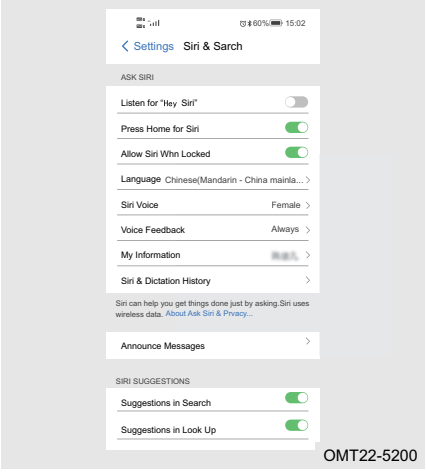
Air outlet streamer trim board: OFF/static/breathing/streamer.

Zone control: Cowl/front/rear.

Phone-link

Apple CarPlay (iOS)

■ Connecting method



OMT22-5200

1. Turn Listen for "Hey Siri" and Press Home for Siri to ON on Settings (Siri&search) screen of phone;

OMT22-5201

2. Turn CarPlay to ON on Settings (General) screen of phone;

OMT22-5480

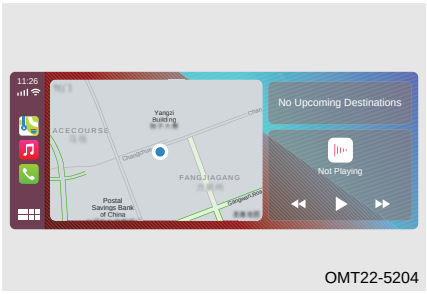
3. Connect USB port and phone using original data cable;

READ

Only USB port " " supports Apple CarPlay screencast function.

OMT22-5203

4. Select Allow on CarPlay permission request screen;



OMT22-5204

5. Enter Apple CarPlay screencast screen.

■ Wireless carplay connection (if equipped)

Step 1: Turn on hotspot on Apple phone, audio head unit WIFI interface is connected to phone hotspot.

Step 2: Connect Apple phone to Bluetooth on audio head unit.

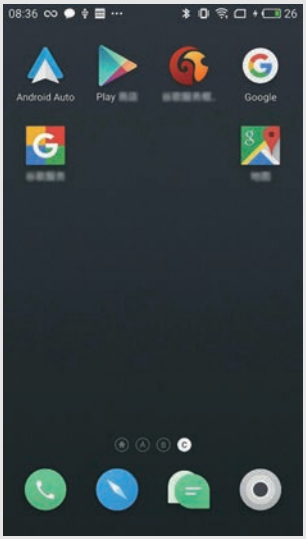
Step 3: Select Carplay according to interface that pops up on audio head unit or phone.

Step 4: Make pairing connection according to pop-up interface on phone; after connection is successfully, audio head unit displays carplay interface.

Step 5: Enter Apple CarPlay screencast screen.

Android Auto (Android)

■ Connecting method



OMT22-5205

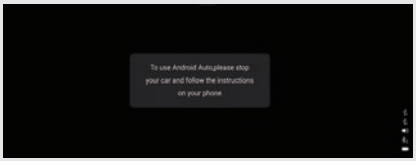
1. Install the Google Framework;
2. Perform the installation in Google Play and run Android Auto, install all supporting softwares according to the system prompt and update the existing program, and then Android Auto can run normal after completing the update;

OMT22-5480

3. Connect USB port and phone using original data cable;

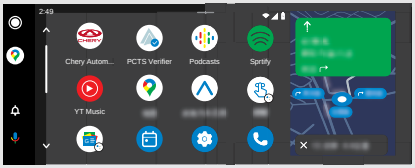
READ

- Only USB port "" supports Android Auto screencast function.
- Before phone-link, please turn on the developer permissions in the phone settings.



OMT22-5206

4. If this phone is connected to the vehicle for the first time (a prompt will pop up on the head unit, please operate according to the prompt on the mobile phone, stop the vehicle and pull the parking brake), then the first connection setting can be completed;



OMT22-5207

5. Click "Android Auto" on the head unit APP to enter "Android Auto" mapping interface.

■ Wireless Android Auto connection (if equipped)

Step 1: Turn on wireless Android Auto switch on the phone.

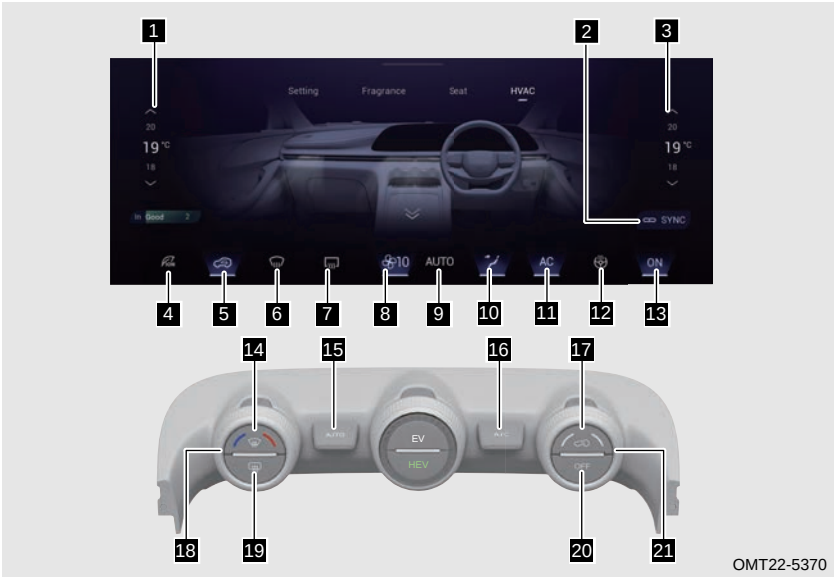
Step 2: Turn on Wi-Fi hotspot on head unit.

Step 3: Perform Bluetooth pairing between head unit and mobile phone.

Step 4: After Bluetooth connection is successful, a reminder to start wireless Android Auto will pop up on head unit, click "START" to complete wireless Android Auto connection.

3-8. Automatic Air Conditioning System

Automatic Air Conditioning System



1 Front passenger temperature adjustment area

2 Single/dual mode button

3 Driver temperature adjustment area

4 Air purification button

5 Outside/recirculated air mode button

6 Front windshield defogging and defrosting button

7 Rear defrosting button

8 Airflow volume adjustment button

9 AUTO button

10 Mode adjustment button

11 A/C button

12 Steering wheel heating button

13 A/C switch button

14 Front windshield defogging and defrosting button

15 AUTO button

16 A/C button

17 Outside/recirculated air mode button

18 Temperature adjustment knob

19 Rear defrosting button

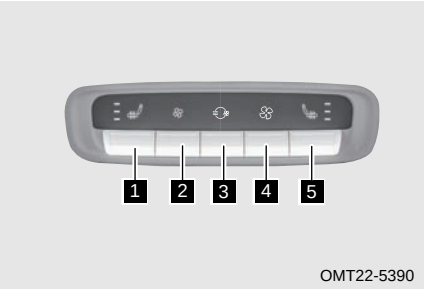
20 A/C switch button

21 Airflow volume adjustment knob

READ

Slide up the screen from the bottom of head unit screen or operate the air conditioning panel button (except temperature adjustment, airflow volume adjustment and rear defrosting button) to display the air conditioning system operation screen.

Rear control panel



1. Rear left seat heating/ventilation button
2. Airflow volume switch button
3. Seat heating/ventilation switch button
4. Airflow volume increase button
5. Rear right seat heating/ventilation button

A/C switch button

Press A/C switch button to realize on/off of air conditioning system.

Temperature adjustment

The temperature can be adjusted by operating the temperature adjustment area on head unit air conditioning interface or air conditioning control panel.

Airflow volume adjustment

The airflow can be adjusted by operating the airflow adjustment area on head unit air conditioning interface or air conditioning control panel.

AUTO button

Press AUTO button to realize on/off of automatic mode.

- In AUTO mode, when operating A/C button, adjusting air volume mode, the corresponding function exits from AUTO mode.
- In AUTO mode, outside/recirculated air mode switches and the circulation function exits the automatic control, and other functions are still in the AUTO mode.
- In AUTO mode, operating the AUTO button will not exit from AUTO mode.

A/C button

Press A/C button to realize air conditioning cooling (air conditioning compressor starts to operate).

READ

The A/C button indicator comes on, indicating that the air conditioning compressor is requested to turn on. Air conditioning compressor is turned on when its operation conditions are met. The indicator goes off, indicating that air conditioning compressor is turned off.

Air purification button

Press air purification button to realize on/off of air purification.

READ

- PM2.5 values of inside/outside are displayed on the head unit.
- For vehicle without anion function, press air purification button and only PM2.5 purification function operates; If vehicle has anion function, it will start anion function and PM2.5 purification function at the same time.
- The air purification effect in winter is not obvious due to low ambient temperature in winter.
- When the air purification function is turned on, the outside/recirculated air mode is switched, and air volume and mode may change.
- Turn on air purification function to ensure that the vehicle is not fogged, the response method of automatic A/C in summer, winter, spring and autumn is not exactly the same, but purification effect can be achieved.

Mode adjustment button

Press the mode adjustment button to realize mode adjustment.

" " Window mode: It can adjust airflow blowing out from defrosting outlet.

" " Face mode: It can adjust airflow blowing out from center and face outlets on both sides.

" " Foot mode: It can adjust airflow blowing out from foot outlet.

" " Face and foot mode: It can adjust airflow blowing out from center and face outlets on both sides and foot outlet.

" " face and window mode: It can adjust airflow blowing out from center and face outlets on both sides and defrosting outlet.

" " Face and foot mode: It can adjust airflow blowing out from defrosting outlet and foot outlet.

" " face, foot and window mode: It can adjust airflow blowing out from center and face outlets on both sides, foot outlet and defrosting outlet.

READ

If windshield glass become fogged-up during driving, defrosting mode is recommended. For details, refer to front windshield defogging and defrosting button.

Outside/recirculated air mode button

Press outside/recirculated air mode button to switch outside/recirculated air mode.

Use the recirculated air mode under following conditions:

- In dusty environment.
- To prevent outside exhaust gas from entering vehicle.
- To quickly cool or heat the air in the vehicle.
- To isolate other odors from outside.

Single/dual mode button

Press "SYNC" single/dual mode button to switch single/dual mode.

READ

- Single mode: " SYNC " indicator comes on, indicating that the air conditioning is in single control mode. Driver side and front passenger side temperature cannot be adjusted separately.
- Dual mode: " SYNC " indicator lamp goes off, indicating that the air conditioning is in dual control mode. Driver side and front passenger side temperature can be adjusted separately.

Front windshield defogging and defrosting button

After vehicle is started, press front windshield defogging and defrosting button to turn on (adjust airflow to make most of it blow to front windshield and small amount of it blow to side window)/off front windshield defogging and defrosting function.

When the airflow volume is not OFF, pressing front windshield defogging and defrosting button will start the outside air mode and A/C compressor forcibly.

READ

- Before driving, make sure that the inner surface of glass is clean and dry, if there is obvious dust or water drop, it is necessary to wipe off.
- When defogging in humid climate (such as rain and snow): Please keep A/C switch ON. If A/C is off, it will affect defogging effect; Please keep outside air mode. If recirculated air mode is selected, it will affect defogging effect.
- When defogging in winter: Please keep outside air mode, adjust the direction of partial heat, the air outlets on both sides of the instrument panel face the windows on both sides, and when outside temperature is above 0℃, A/C auxiliary defogging is needed.
- After wiping off all frost or fog, adjust mode and airflow volume to other proper position to improve comfort in vehicle.
- If the A/C fails to cool, the defogging effect will be affected. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

⚠ CAUTION

- For driving safety, please use the defogging function correctly.
- Please do not use recirculated air mode for a long time in winter, otherwise the front windshield will be fogged quickly.
- Poor visibility will increase the risk of traffic accidents and personal injury. Therefore, it is very important for driving safety to ensure a good visibility during driving.

Rear defrosting button

After vehicle is started, press rear defrosting button, indicating that rear defrosting/outside rear view mirror heater defrosting function is turned on/off.

The rear windshield/outside rear view mirror heater defrosting function will turn off automatically after operating for about 20 minutes.

⚠ CAUTION

- Make sure that the defrosting function of rear windshield/outside rear view mirror is turned off after defogging or defrosting the rear windshield/outside rear view mirror surface.
- Do not scratch or damage the heater wires when cleaning the rear windshield or outside rear view mirror.
- When the battery is low, the rear defroster cannot be turned on to ensure that vehicle starts normally.

⚠ WARNING

To prevent burning yourself, do not touch the rear windshield/outside rear view mirror when the heater defrosting function of rear windshield/outside rear view mirror is operating or immediately after being turned off.

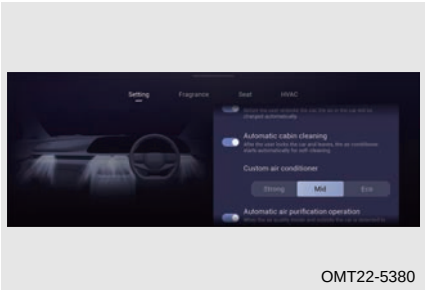
Steering wheel heating button

Start the vehicle, press the steering wheel heating button and steering wheel starts heating. It stops heating after operating for a while.

Rear seat heating button

With vehicle powered on, press the rear seat heating button, and the rear seat will be heated (ON - level 3 - level 2 - level 1 - OFF).

A/C Setting



OMT22-5380

With vehicle powered on, set related functions in the A/C setting interface.

[Interior automatic ventilation]: The vehicle will be automatically ventilated before the user unlocks and enters the vehicle. The blower can work up to two times before starting vehicle.

[Interior automatic cleaning]: A/C will turn on automatically and perform self-cleaning after the user locks and leaves the vehicle. It is used to dry the A/C equipment to keep A/C system dry and avoid the accumulation of bacteria and mildew.

[Custom A/C]: Set A/C to energy saving/comfort/strong mode (It only operates when A/C is in AUTO mode, and airflow volume changes significantly).

[A/C purification auto operation]: A/C purification system automatically operates when high PM2.5 concentration in vehicle is detected. Air Quality System (AQS) will automatically turn on the recirculated air mode when it detects decline of outside air quality level. When the air quality returns to an appropriate level, the recirculated air mode turns off automatically; AQS is not designed to detect odorous gases; When ambient temperature is 2℃ or less, the air purification exits automatically after operating for a while to prevent front windshield from fogging up due to long period of air purification.

[Auto Defogging]: A/C will be automatically defogging when the fogging risk is detected in vehicle.

[Welcome Function]: The fragrance system turns on automatically before the user unlocks and enters the vehicle.

[Refreshing Function]: The fragrance system turns on automatically for a short while when driving time is long.

Air Conditioning Heating Operation

When the vehicle is in READY:

1. Press AUTO button, the air conditioning system will automatically control outlet temperature, outlet mode and airflow volume according to the user setting temperature and current ambient condition to meet the user’s requirement of temperature control.
2. Choosing recirculated air mode can speed up heating, which is helpful to improve fuel economy and driving comfort.

READ

- It is recommended to adjust to foot mode and turn off A/C.
- When air conditioning control operates automatically, priority is given to defogging and defrosting, so the auto mode is window and food mode, resulting in excessive noise and insufficient temperature at feet area during actual usage. It’s recommended to set to foot mode manually when there is no fogging on front windshield. If there are more people in vehicle and front windshield fogs up, air outlet mode can be switched to foot and window mode manually.

Air Conditioning Cooling Operation

■ When the vehicle is in READY:

1. Press AUTO button, the air conditioning system will automatically control compressor speed, outlet temperature, outlet mode and airflow volume according to the user setting temperature and current ambient condition to meet the user’s requirement of temperature control.
2. Choosing recirculated air mode can speed up cooling, which is helpful to improve fuel economy and driving comfort.

■ For the best cooling effect, please operate as follows:

1. Please keep the surface of the air conditioning filter clean without any obvious blockage;
2. Press AUTO button, then set driver/front passenger seat temperature to LO. The airflow volume, outside/recirculated air mode, blowing mode, air conditioning compressor will be set to required maximum cooling status automatically.

READ

- Also, dirts and blockage in the surface of air conditioning condenser may cause poor cooling effect, so please keep condenser clean.
- After the A/C system cooling operation, some water may drip from the air conditioning drain pipe and form a pool under vehicle, which is normal.
- After the air conditioning cooling operation, the air conditioning blower will run at low speed for 60 seconds within 5 minutes after vehicle is powered off and locked, so as to dry the condensate water remained in evaporator, preventing odor or mildew caused by retained condensation water.
- If air conditioning is turned on and vehicle is continually climbing long slopes, or is in extremely slow driving for a long time, the engine may overheat. Please observe the engine coolant high temperature warning indicator. If engine overheats, it is recommended to turn off air conditioning.
- When air cools down quickly in hot and humid conditions, the fog may be seen from outlet, which is a normal physical phenomenon.
- It is recommended to turn on the air conditioning refrigeration system for 5 minutes or more every month and open the window simultaneously, which will be helpful to prevent air conditioning system damage due to lack of lubricant, and also prevent evaporator odor due to moist and germs.
- When the temperature is low, such as in winter, even if indicator comes on after operating A/C switch, compressor still cannot be started.
- Refrigerant filled in air conditioning system will decrease over time, if you feel that the refrigeration effect of air conditioning becomes poor, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair in time.
- During sudden acceleration, overtaking and climbing, power system needs more power for compensation. At this time, if the air conditioning is operating, the compressor may be turned off automatically, if it does not turn off automatically and you feel it is lack of power, it is recommended to turn off air conditioning.

CAUTION

- Please purchase special refrigerant and compressor lubricant at the authorized service station, otherwise, air conditioning system damages sustained by this are not under claims.
- In hot weather, the temperature in closed vehicle will quickly increase due to sunshine, this may cause personal or animal injury or even death, especially for infants and very young children.
- It is forbidden to repair air conditioning system by yourself, as the high pressure refrigerant in air conditioning system is harmful to human. It is necessary to go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair.

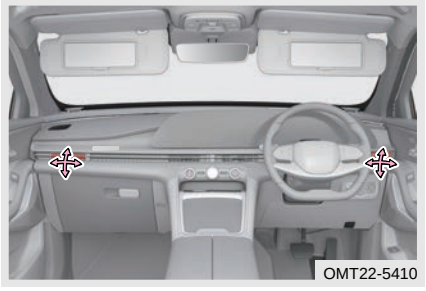
Air Outlets Airflow Control

Center outlets

OMT22-5400

Move center outlet adjustment lever up and down, left and right by hand to adjust direction of airflow.

Side outlets


OMT22-5410

Move left/right side outlet adjustment lever up and down, left and right by hand to adjust direction of airflow.

Rear outlets

OMT22-5430

Move armrest box outlet adjustment lever up and down, left and right by hand to adjust direction of airflow.

Move B-pillar outlet adjustment lever up and down, left and right by hand to adjust direction of airflow (if equipped).

Auxiliary fascia console outlets

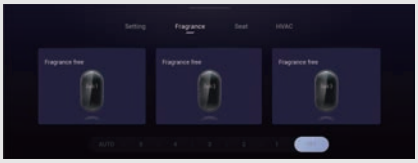
OMT22-5440

Turn it counterclockwise to open outlets, Turn it clockwise to close outlets.

3-9. Fragrance System (If Equipped)

Fragrance System

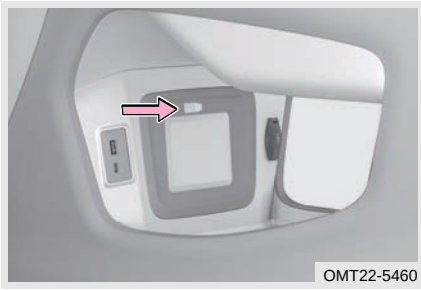
The fragrance system improves smell in the vehicle and removes odors from other items or objects in the vehicle. It can refresh the interior air and create supreme pleasure for all the occupants. The fragrance also relieves people's nervous tension and makes them feel relaxing and enjoyment. Meanwhile, the refreshing fragrance allows driver to keep conscious and calm while driving, which reduces driving accidents.


OMT22-5450

The vehicle is equipped with three kinds of fragrance: Fresh and natural, healing and relaxing, sporty and passionate. User can choose fragrance according to his/her preferences and then sets different fragrance concentrations according to his/her need.

With vehicle powered on, press OFF button to turn off the fragrance system; Press AUTO button, and system turns on fragrance system automatically.

Replacing fragrance


OMT22-5460

1. Push the button to right to open fragrance box.

OMT22-5465

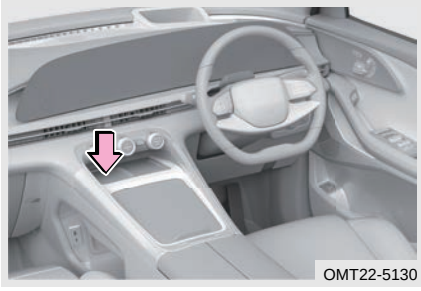
2. Remove the fragrance box cover and replace the fragrance.
3. Align the slot with the limit boss, press the fragrance box cover after clamping.

READ

- User can set the fragrance welcome function and refreshing function in head unit. For details, refer to "A/C Setting".
- Care should be taken when removing/installing the fragrance box to avoid damage. It is recommended to go to authorized service station to be operated by after-sales personnel. Fragrance can be purchased from authorized service station.

3-10. Wireless Charging

Wireless charging uses electromagnetic induction technology conveniently and safely to allow for a better experience while driving.


OMT22-5130

Start vehicle and put the mobile phone in wireless charging sensing area, then the wireless charging starts to work and the head unit displays " "; the head unit displays " " after charging is completed.

Wireless charging may not work properly in the following conditions:

- Wireless charging operation frequency is close to keyless entry working frequency, which is easy to interfere with each other; In some conditions, such as opening/closing doors or depressing brake pedal, the vehicle will recognize whether the key is left in vehicle, and the keyless entry starts to work. At this time, it's necessary to shield charging function for 5 ~ 10 seconds; Wait for 5 ~ 10 seconds, the wireless charging function resumes.
- The mobile phone cannot be charged if the back of phone is more than 6 mm away from wireless charging sensing area.
- The mobile phone cannot be charged if the back of the phone has thick metal or NFC card key (such as coin, metal mobile phone shell), and head unit displays " ".
- If the temperature of the phone itself or the wireless charging sensing area (-surface) is too high, the phone may not be able to enter charging mode. It is recommended to wait for the temperature to decrease before charging.
- Due to different information security requirements from different mobile phone manufacturers, some brand of phones may not be able to release fully charged information to the wireless charging module, and even after being fully charged, the screen of the head unit still displays the charging status icon.
- If the phone malfunctions, it may also cause the inability to charge. Other compliant mobile phones can be used for wireless charging detecting to confirm if there is a malfunction with the phone.
- When placing the NFC card on the wireless charging upper trim panel, please place the card vertically near the center to perform inspection of card in the center area of NFC icon. If the card is not detected after deviating from the center, please take it back to the center position.

READ

- The wireless charging function of the mobile phone can be enabled in [-Vehicle Settings] interface of the head unit system.
- The wireless charging function only supports phones with wireless charging function; If your mobile phone does not support the wireless charging function, it is recommended that do not use the wireless charging patch. The quality of the wireless charging patch in the market is uneven, and damage may be caused if using frequently (such as function failure, poor interface contact, metal foreign object recognition failure). The company does not make promises for the problems caused by the external wireless charging coil.

■ Phone forgetting reminder function

The phone forgetting reminder function can be enabled in [Vehicle Settings] interface of the head unit system.

With vehicle powered off and mobile phone with wireless charging function still in the charging sensing area, the head unit will broadcast a prompt sound: "-Mobile device is still in vehicle" when driver door is opened.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not place heavy objects in the charging area or impact the surface of the wireless charging area to avoid damage to the charging area.
- During the program upgrade process, please do not place any items in the charging area to avoid abnormal wireless charging function after the upgrade.
- The wireless charging area only supports charging one phone at a time, and the company does not make promises for any problems caused by illegal operations.
- During wireless charging, do not place ETC card/ID card/NFC card key/ credit card, etc. in the charging area, as this may cause damage to card data.
- Do not splash liquids (water, beverages, etc.) on the charging area to prevent liquids from entering the wireless charging module through the gaps in the charging area, causing charging failure. Do not use grease, oil or alcohol to clean the charging area. If you accidentally spill liquid on the charging area, please wipe it immediately with a dry cloth.
- If the mobile phone cannot be charged normally when the vehicle is awakened, make sure that there is no foreign matter in the wireless charging area and wait for the wireless charging area to cool before trying. If it is still unable to charge, it is recommended that you contact service station for inspection and repair.
- When using the NFC card key inspection function in vehicle, the card should be placed in the center of the inspection area as much as possible; If the card is offset from the center position, it may fail to check the card and cause the vehicle to be unable to power on. At this time, please place the card in the center position and perform the card inspection operation again.
- Please place your phone in the center lower position of the phone slot with the bottom of the phone pressing against the heat dissipation vent as much as possible, to ensure that the phone is in the optimal charging position. If the phone shakes due to intense driving (accelerate, decelerate or turn sharply) or poor road conditions during driving, it may affect charging efficiency and stability. Charging interruption is a normal phenomenon.

WARNING

- During driving, do not check the charging status of mobile phone for a long time to avoid potential traffic safety hazard.
- Passengers using pacemakers or other medical devices should turn off the phone wireless charging function before driving.
- Do not place coins, keys, chip cards or other metal items in the charging area. Otherwise, it may cause the metal object to be heated, leading to abnormal charging or causing safety accidents. If any metal foreign matter between mobile phone and charging pad is found, the wireless charging function should be immediately turned off. Do not remove the foreign matter immediately by hand to avoid burns.
- To prevent battery depleted, do not use high-power wireless charging function for a long time when the vehicle is not applied high voltage; When there is no driver in vehicle, please do not place your phone in the vehicle for charging to avoid safety hazards.

3-11. Remote Control System (If Equipped)

Remote Control System

User can remotely view the vehicle status (including lock status, engine status, window status, moon roof status, back door status, tire temperature and pressure, remaining fuel, etc.) on their mobile phone APP, and remotely control the vehicle to improve driving efficiency, monitoring and protection of the vehicle.

READ

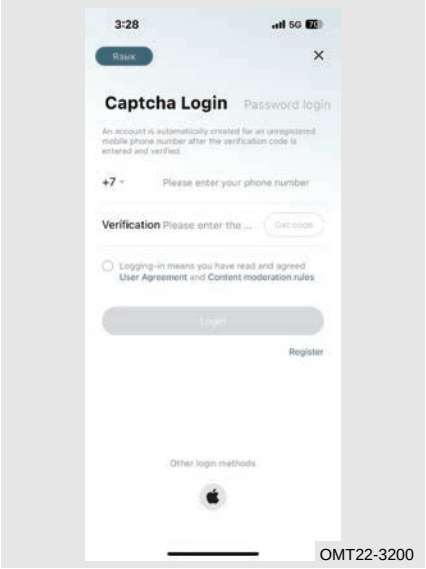
For details about activation and usage of vehicle control function, refer to electronic manual in mobile APP, or contact authorized service station.

CAUTION

Due to product version upgrade or other reasons, the information company will update or revise the contents herein from time to time without prior notice. Please make sure that you refer to the latest version before using the product.

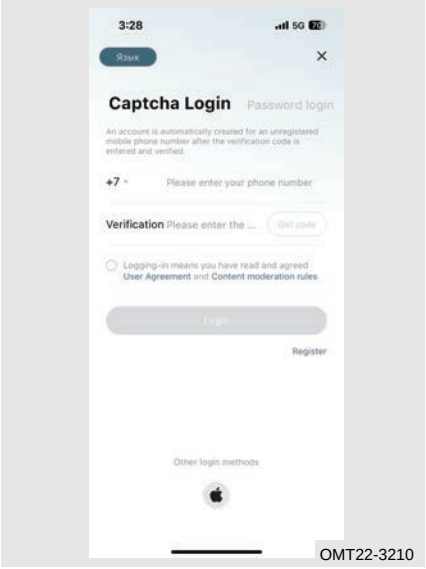
User registration

■ Registration with mobile phone (MP) number



OMT22-3200

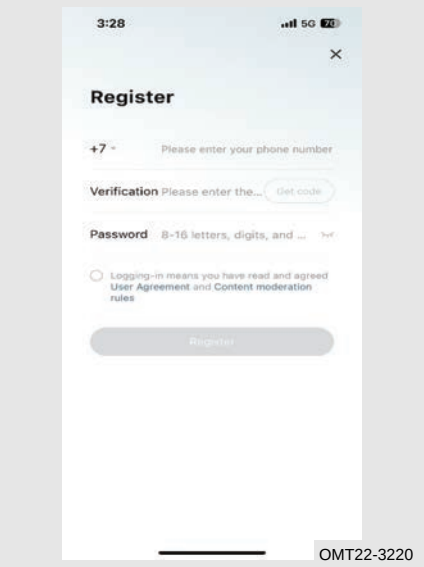
Open the vehicle control APP and click the "MY" tab at the page bottom. The following interface will display when user logs in for the first time:



OMT22-3210

Register the vehicle control APP with MP number. Click "REGISTER" to enter the user registration page. By following the prompts, enter the MP number and the corresponding verification code, set the initial user password, and check the User Agreement and Privacy Agreement.

After entering all information correctly, click "REGISTER" on the page, a user account is created successfully.

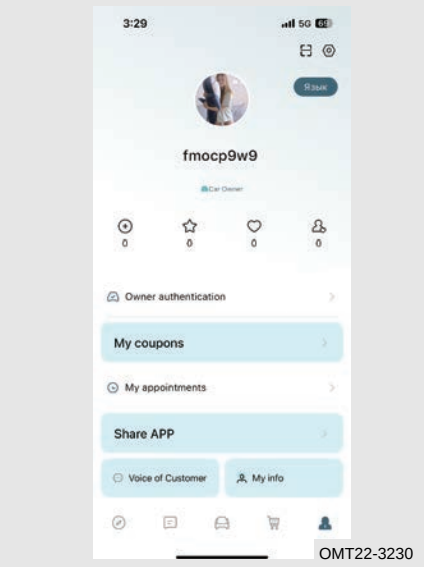


You may also enter the MP number and verification code directly on the verification code login page, and the system will automatically create an account after detecting the unregistered MP number.

The page will jump to the APP operating interface automatically upon the account creation.

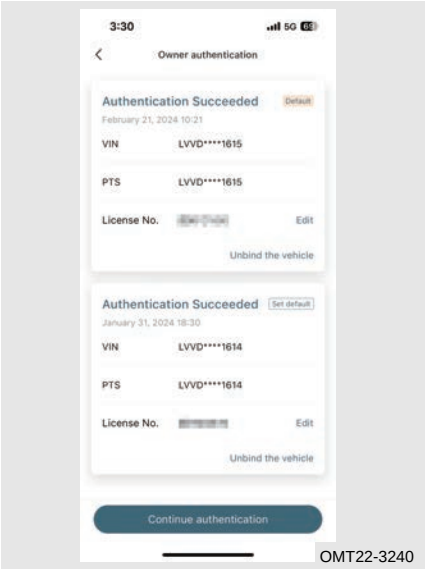
Vehicle binding and vehicle control activation

■ Add a vehicle



After logging in, click the "MY" tab, and then click "OWNER AUTHENTICATION".

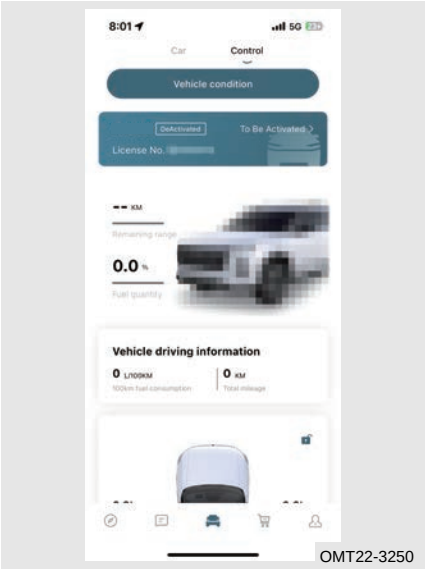
Click and enter vehicle information on the pop-up page, such as VIN, engine number, license plate number, etc.



OMT22-3240

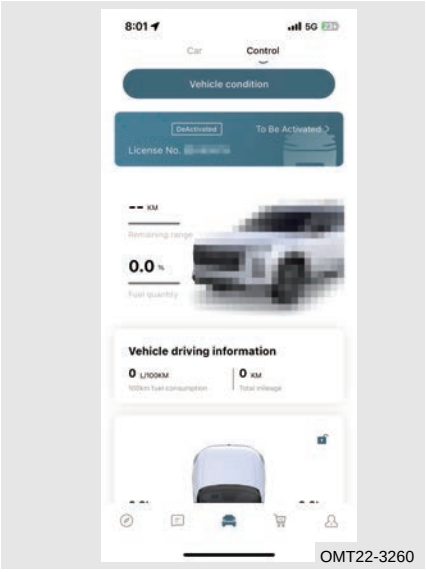
Click "SUBMIT FOR AUTHENTICATION" to add a vehicle. If the vehicle information has been subject to maintenance in the system, after the data verification is completed, it will prompt "VEHICLE BINDING SUCCESSFUL", otherwise "AUTHENTICATION FAILED, VIN DOES NOT EXIST" will display, please carefully check whether the VIN and engine number are matching.

■ Activate vehicle control function



OMT22-3250

For users who have activated the vehicle control function for the first time, click on the "Car" page and then the "Car Control" page to enter the vehicle remote control interface.

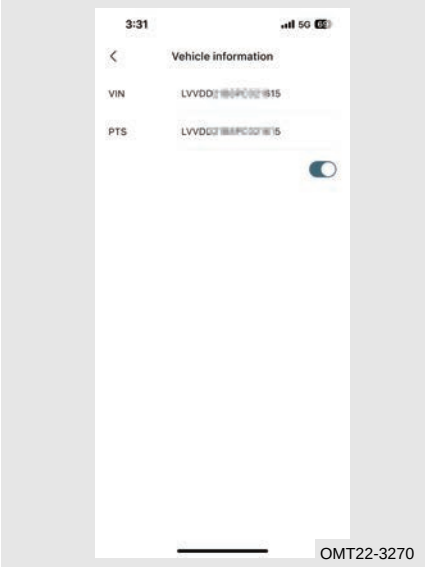


Click "To Be Activated" to activate the car control function.

Enter the MP verification code again for verification. After that, enter the vehicle control password, then the activation is successful. At this time, the vehicle control function is activated.

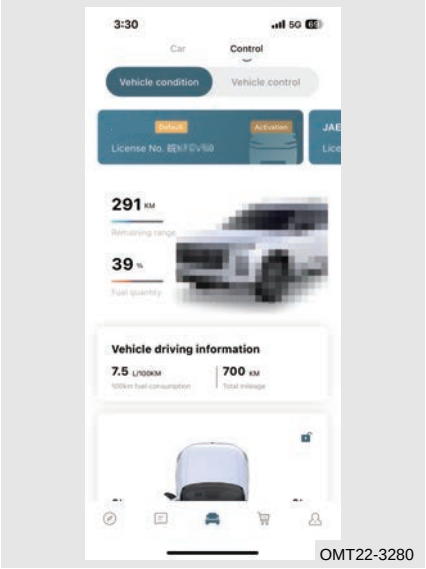
View vehicle status

■ Select a vehicle



In case of several available vehicles at the same time, click the vehicle card and click "DEFAULT VEHICLE" to view the vehicle status.

■ View vehicle status

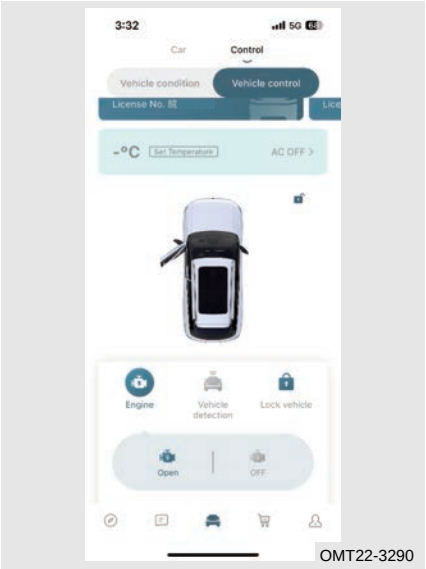


OMT22-3280

On the vehicle details page, check various vehicle status information, such as battery SOC, mileage and vehicle location, etc.

Remote vehicle control

■ Remote engine start/shutdown

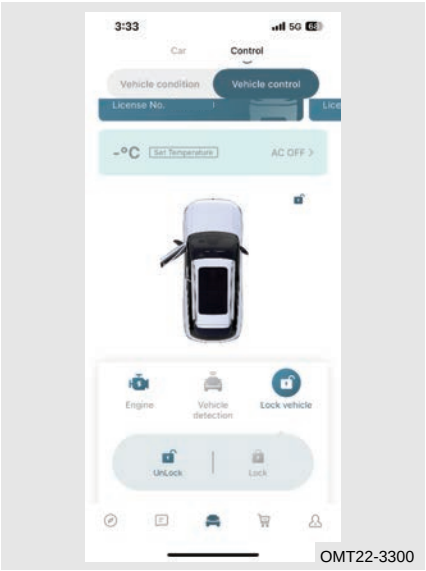


OMT22-3290

Click the vehicle control page, click "-REMOTE START" and select the start time.

After confirmation, the vehicle engine will start. Click "SHUTDOWN" and the engine will stop working.

■ Remote unlock/lock

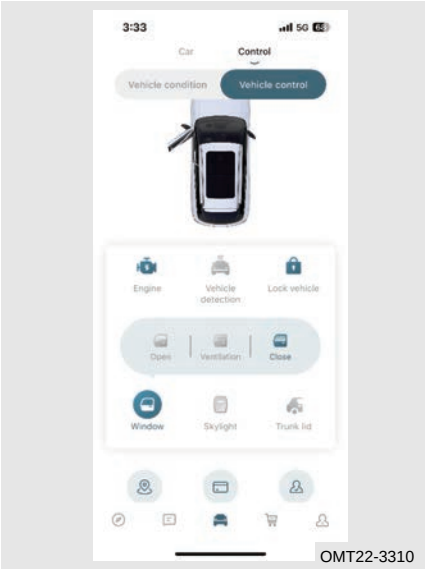


OMT22-3300

Click the vehicle control page, click "-DOOR LOCK" and then click "UNLOCK".

After confirmation, the doors will be unlocked. Click "LOCK" again and the doors will be locked.

■ Remote window open/close

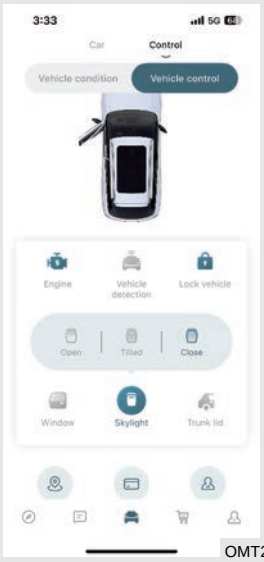


OMT22-3310

Click the vehicle control page, click "-WINDOW" and then click "OPEN" or "VENTILATION".

After confirmation, the windows will automatically open in different ranges according to the settings. Click "CLOSE" again and the windows will close.

■ Remote skylight open

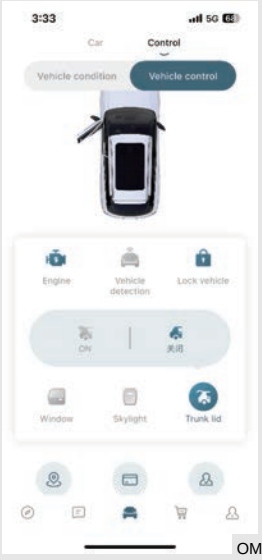


OMT22-3320

Click the vehicle control page, click "-SKYLIGHT" and then click "OPEN" or "TILT".

After confirmation, the skylight will automatically open or tilt according to the settings. Click "CLOSE" again and the skylight will close.

■ Remote trunk/tail door open

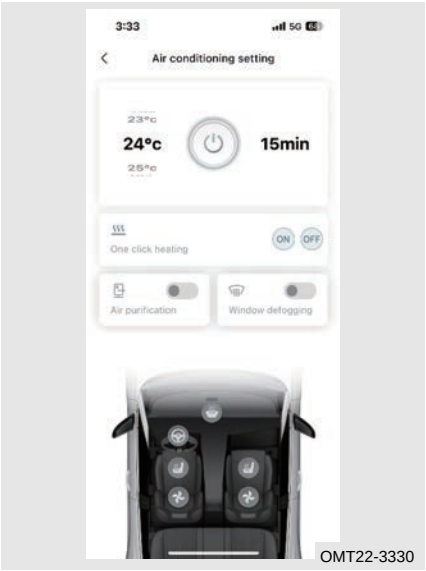


OMT22-3330

Click the vehicle control page, click "-TAIL DOOR" and then click "OPEN".

After confirmation, the trunk or tail doors will automatically open. Click "-CLOSE" again and the tail doors will close (the trunk can only be opened, but not closed).

■ Remote A/C ON



Click the A/C icon on the vehicle condition/vehicle control page. In the A/C sub-interface, you can adjust the A/C temperature and execution time by sliding.

After selecting the A/C temperature and ON duration, click "SWITCH", the A/C will be turned on. Click again, the A/C will be turned off.

In the A/C sub-interface, the seat heating or ventilation function can be adjusted. By clicking the icons on the virtual vehicle, the sub-functions of steering wheel heating, windshield heating, seat heating and seat ventilation can be realized.

In the A/C sub-interface, click "AIR PURIFICATION"/"WINDOW DEFOGGING" to turn on the corresponding functions.

Map service

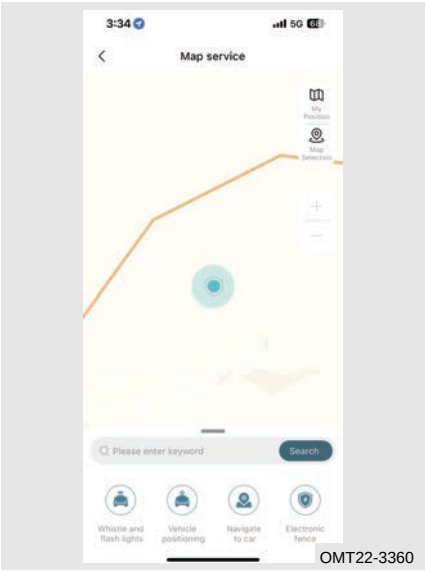
■ Flashing lights and whistling

OMT22-3350

You may click "FLASHING LIGHTS AND WHISTLING" either in the vehicle remote control function sub-item "VEHICLE SEARCH" or in the map service function sub-item.

After confirmation, the lights will flash and whistle to help the user find the vehicle quickly.

■ Vehicle positioning



OMT22-3360

You may click "VEHICLE POSITIONING" either in the vehicle remote control function sub-item "-VEHICLE SEARCH" or in the map service function sub-item.

After this function is activated, the user may determine the vehicle location through the vehicle icon on the map.

■ Navigate to vehicle

Click "MAP SERVICE" to enter the function sub-item, and click "NAVIGATE TO VEHICLE".

At this time, the APP will wake up the third-party navigation system (google map/Here We Go).

After entering the third-party navigation system, the user's current location and the current vehicle location will be taken as the starting point of navigation, and the user may use the navigation function to plan the best route in order to reach the location of the vehicle.

■ Electronic fence

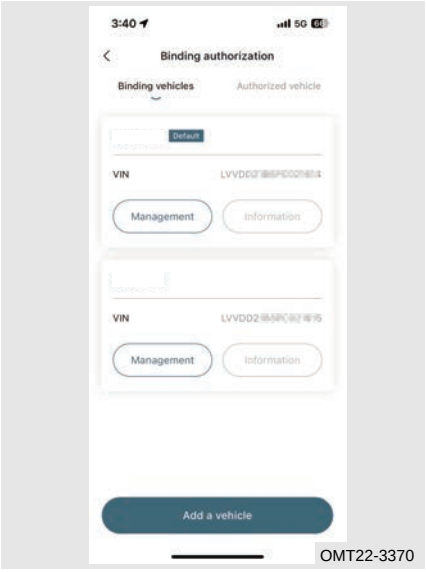
View the set electronic fence information.

Click "MAP SERVICE" to enter the function sub-item, and then click "-ELECTRONIC FENCE" button.

The use may browse the created electronic fence and view its name, notification conditions, shape and size, etc.

Click "VIEW LOCATION" to view the location and coverage of the fence on the map.

Add user authorization



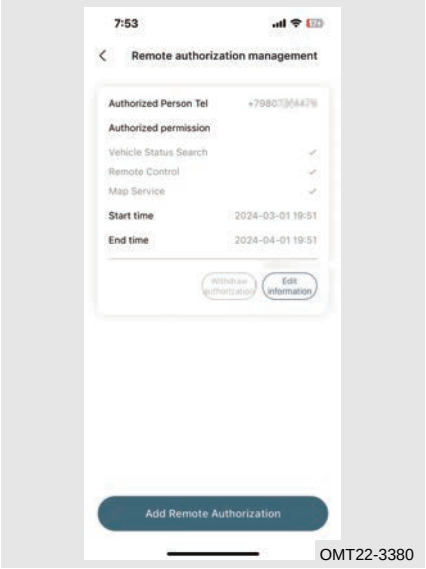
Click "BINDING AUTHORIZATION", and the vehicle that can be bound by authorization will be displayed in the pop-up interface.

Click "REMOTE AUTHORIZATION MANAGEMENT" on the corresponding vehicle.

Click "ADD REMOTE AUTHORIZATION", and enter the name, MP number, effective time and invalid time of authorization, vehicle control password (-irrelevant to the original vehicle control) and limit of authority of the authorized person on the pop-up page.

The authorizer can set the authorized person's range of right to use the vehicle, including basic permissions, remote control and vehicle positioning.

■ Edit user authorization



On the setting or authorization management page of the vehicle control APP, the user may choose to edit the user authorization.

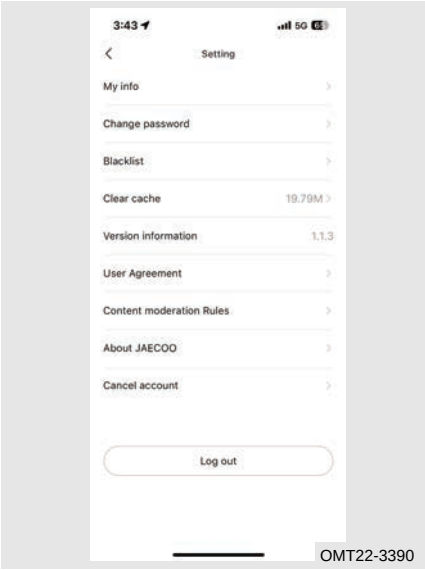
Users may select the existing authorized users to edit and modify their related information or permission range.

■ Revoke authorization

On the setting or authorization management page of the vehicle control APP, the user may choose to delete the user authorization.

Users may select to delete the existing authorized users and confirm the deletion operation.

Setting



Enter the "MY" function page. Click the setting button in the upper right corner to enter the setting screen.

Set Personal information, Change password, Blacklist, Clear cache, Version information, User Agreement, Content moderation, and Cancel account, Language on setting screen.

3-12. Power Outlet and USB

■ Front power outlet

The power outlet can only be used when the vehicle is powered on.

⚠ CAUTION

- To prevent the fuse from being blown, do not use electrical equipment with high power (120 W or more).
- To prevent the battery from depleting, do not use the power outlet longer than necessary when the engine is not running.
- Do not insert anything or allow any liquid to get into the outlet other than an appropriate plug. Failure to do so may cause electrical failure or short circuits.

■ USB

OMT22-5480

Front USB port is located on the front end of auxiliary fascia console.

Type-A port: It can be used for reading U disc, phone connect and charging the electrical equipment with low power, such as phone etc.

Type-C port: It can be used for charging the electrical equipment with low power, such as phone etc.

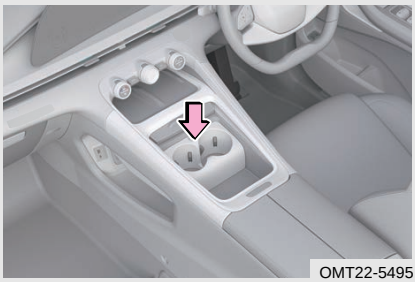
OMT22-5490

Rear USB port is located under the rear air outlet of center armrest box.

Type-A port: It can be used for charging the electrical equipment with low power, such as phone etc.

Type-C port (if equipped): It can be used for charging the electrical equipment with low power, such as phone etc.

3-13. Cup Holders


OMT22-5495

Front cup holder is located on auxiliary fascia console.

READ
Front cup holder is removable, and more storage space can be supplied after removal.

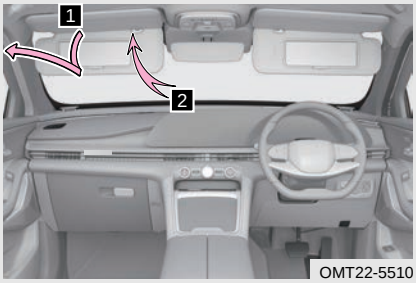
OMT22-5496

Rear cup holder is located on the rear center seatback.

⚠ CAUTION

- Cover the cup or drink can firmly to prevent water or drinks from spraying out.
- Do not place anything other than cups or drink cans in cup holders.

3-14. Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors



OMT22-5510

If it is necessary to use vanity mirror, turn up the vanity mirror cover plate. For vehicle equipped with vanity mirror light, the corresponding vanity mirror light will come on when opening the vanity mirror cover plate.

1 Flip the sun visor down.

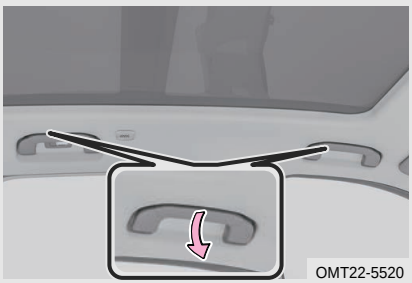
2 Detach the hook and turn it outward to shade the sidelight.

OMT22-5515

If vehicle is equipped with double-layer sun visors, both frontal light and side light can be shielded.

3-15. Assist Grips

Passenger Assist Grips


OMT22-5520

Passenger assist grips are installed above front passenger door and both rear passenger doors respectively.

When traveling on rough roads, passengers can keep balance by grasping the grips to ensure safety.

Rear Center Armrest

OMT22-5530

Rear seat is equipped with a fold-down armrest with cup holders, turn down the armrest for use.

⚠ CAUTION

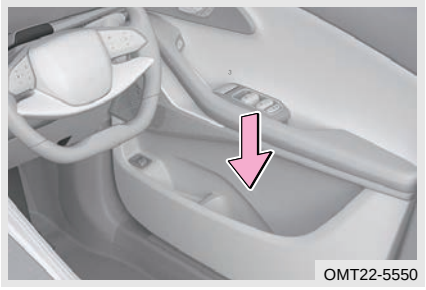
Please return the center armrest to its original position when not in use.

⚠ WARNING

Anyone (including adult and children) cannot occupy the rear center seat after flipping the center armrest down, because the passenger on this seat cannot maintain the correct posture and it is very easy to cause injury.

3-16. Storage Space

Door Storage Boxes

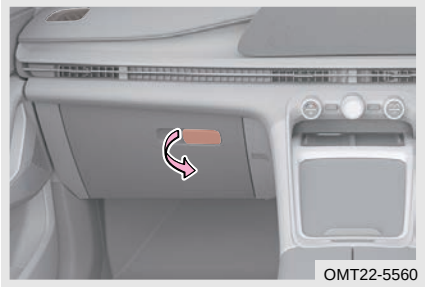

OMT22-5550

Door storage boxes on front and rear doors can be used for storing maps, cups and other items.

READ

Do not place oversize objects in the pockets.

Glove Box (If Equipped)


OMT22-5560

The glove box can be opened, which is used to store map, instructions and other items.

READ

Do not place oversize objects in the glove box.

⚠ CAUTION

Keep the glove box closed. In the event of sudden braking or sudden swerving, an accident may occur due to an occupant being struck by an open glove box or the items stored inside.

Auxiliary Fascia Console Storage Box

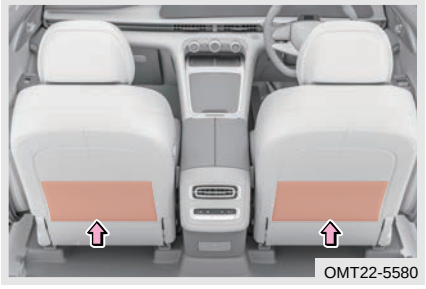
OMT22-5570

Auxiliary fascia console storage box is used to store map, instructions and other items.

⚠ WARNING

- Adults or children are not allowed to sit on the auxiliary fascia console storage box.
- Auxiliary fascia console storage box must be closed when the vehicle is running, and the opening auxiliary fascia console storage box may hinder the driver’s arm movement to prevent injury.

Seat Storage Bag


OMT22-5580

Front seatbacks are both equipped with storage bags on backside, which are used to store documents, instruction etc.

Luggage Compartment

OMT22-5590

To enlarge space for stowing luggage, the rear seats can be folded when no passenger in seats. The folding rear seats provide convenience for storage of cargo. For details, please refer to "Seats".

When stowing luggage in the vehicle, observe the following precautions:

- Be careful to keep the vehicle balanced.
- For better fuel economy, do not stow unneeded items.
- Make sure that the stowing items are not oversize to prevent the back door from closing properly.

⚠ WARNING

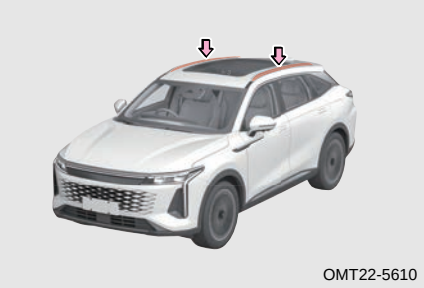
- Do not drive the vehicle with the back door open or not closed, to prevent items from being thrown out to cause personal injury.
- Do not stack goods or luggage higher than seatback. Keep them low, as close to the floor as possible to prevent them sliding forward in event of braking, causing personal injury.
- Do not allow anyone to sit in the luggage compartment. The passengers should sit in their seats with their seat belts properly fastened. Otherwise, they may be seriously injured in event of sudden braking or a collision.

■ Luggage curtain

OMT22-5600

Pull the luggage curtain to the slots of point A and point B to secure it, and confirm if it is secured properly.

■ Carrier


OMT22-5610

Roof carrier is used to load cargo which can bear 30 kg goods. Overweight will cause carrier, body roof and other components to be damaged, the various problems caused by overweight are not within the claims.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not overload the roof carrier.
- Do not exceed total length or total width of the vehicle when roof carrier is used for loading cargo.
- Before driving, make sure that cargos are securely fastened on the roof carrier.
- Be careful not to scratch the roof surface, place a blanket or other protector between cargo and roof if necessary.

⚠ WARNING

- Apply loads evenly. Improper loading may cause deterioration of steering or braking control, which may cause serious injury or even death.
- Loading cargo on roof carrier will make the center of the vehicle gravity higher. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking or abrupt maneuvers, otherwise it may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover due to failure to operate vehicle correctly.

3-17. Front Compartment Cover

The front compartment cover release lever is located at the right lower part of the driver side instrument panel.

OMT22-2680

1. Pull hood release lever, and the hood will pop up slightly; Pull it again, and the hood pops up slightly again;
2. Lift the hood up and lift and support the hood under action of the air spring;
3. Lower the hood and close it until the latch is locked;
4. After closing the front compartment cover, lift the front compartment cover lightly to check that front compartment cover is fully closed.

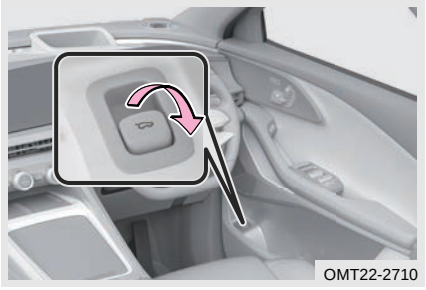
⚠ CAUTION

- Before closing the front compartment cover, check if you have not left any tools, rags etc. in the front compartment.
- Make sure that the front compartment cover is completely closed before driving. If the front compartment cover is not closed completely, drive vehicle to a safe place and stop it, and close it properly.
- When closing the front compartment cover, do not slam it forcefully, otherwise it may be deformed.

3-18. Power Back Door

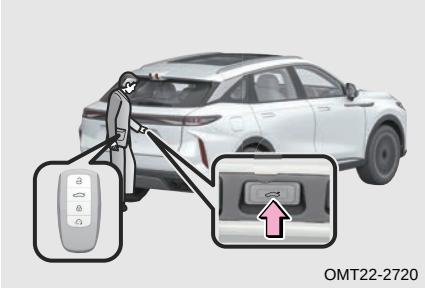
For your convenience, the power back door can be opened/closed in various ways (such as driver side front right door switch, back door exterior switch, back door interior switch, smart key remote control, smart key sensing opening, voice, remote opening/closing back door), and the height adjustment function can also be achieved, which can make you fully feel the convenience of power back door.

■ Opening/closing power back door


OMT22-2710

Power back door switch is located under the front right door.

With vehicle powered on and in disarming mode, if you pull the power back door switch outward, turn signal lights will come on and power back door will be opened/closed.


OMT22-2720

- Manual opening/closing:

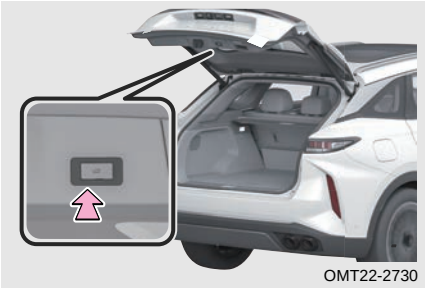
1. With central lock unlocked, press back door switch, turn signal lights will come on and power back door will be opened/closed.
2. With central lock locked, approach to back of vehicle when carrying smart key and press back door switch, turn signal lights will come on and power back door will be opened/closed.

- One-button open/close: Long press back door opener button on smart key, turn signal lights will come on and power back door will be opened/closed.
- Sensing open: While vehicle is powered off or is started remotely, four doors are closed, approach to the back of vehicle when carrying smart key on your person, the system automatically recognizes smart key, after turn signal lights come on, take a step back, power back door opens.
- If you press back door switch or short press the back door opener button on smart key during back door opening/closing, power back door will stop operating.

READ

- For details about voice recognition function, refer to "Head Unit System".
- For details about remote back door control, refer to "Remote Control System".
- The smart key sensing back door opening needs to be set in head unit system. For details, refer to "Head Unit System".
- Only sensing opening is available for power back door, sensing closing is not available.
- The process of back door sensing opening can also be stop by pressing the back door button on smart key during back door sensing reminding.
- If you are washing the vehicle or doing other things near back door while carrying smart key, it may cause back door automatically sense function operates, please take care to avoid accidents.

■ Back door button usage instructions


OMT22-2730

"🚗" This button is located on the right inner side of back door.

- Back door function can be turned off/suspended.
- With four doors locked and vehicle in arming state, open the back door and then close it, four doors are still locked and vehicle is in arming state.
- Back door opening height can be set.

Operating method is as follows:

1. With central lock unlocked, press back door button, turn signal lights will come on and power back door will be opened/closed.
2. Long press the back door "🚗" button until vehicle gives an light reminder, indicating that back door opening height is set successfully.

READ
• The back door opening height can also be set in head unit system. For details, refer to "Head Unit System". • If the back door opening is too high/too low, the back door opening height cannot be set.

■ Back door jam protection function

If the back door encounters resistance (such as children, luggage, etc.), back door operates in the opposite direction until it is fully opened/closed, which is effective in preventing child injury and vehicle damage.

⚠ CAUTION

- When the back door opens, do not pull electric support rod laterally, which may cause damage to related parts.
- If the battery is disconnected when opening back door, the power back door needs to be manually closed to locked position at a constant speed, and then operate back door switch to open/close the power back door normally.
- When the back door is opened to the highest position, it cannot be pushed or supported by hand to higher place, as this may cause damage to related parts.
- Before opening the back door, be sure to note that there should be nothing in the opening range, which could result in scratching the back door.
- Before driving, make sure that back door is closed in place, otherwise it may cause accidents and damage to related parts.
- When closing back door by hand, operate gently, do not operate with brute force, which may damage motor and module.
- When going uphill or downhill, due to change in the center of gravity, the back door may not open or close. This is normal. Open or close it by hand.
- If the back door fails to operate correctly, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair in time.
- When closing the back door, make sure that nobody will be caught. If closing is interrupted, close it again.

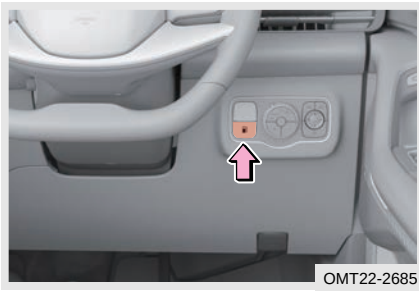
⚠ WARNING

- Before driving, the back door must be closed, otherwise it may cause accidents and damage to related parts.
- Although the vehicle is equipped with jam protection function, do not activate jam protection function on purpose to avoid accidental injury.

■ Protection function

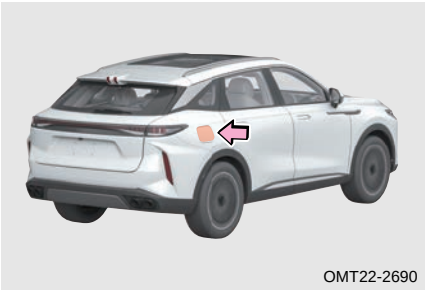
If multiple jam protections occur when opening and closing the back door, it may not operate in order to protect the motor and system, so you will need to close the back door by hand.

3-19. Fuel Filler Door



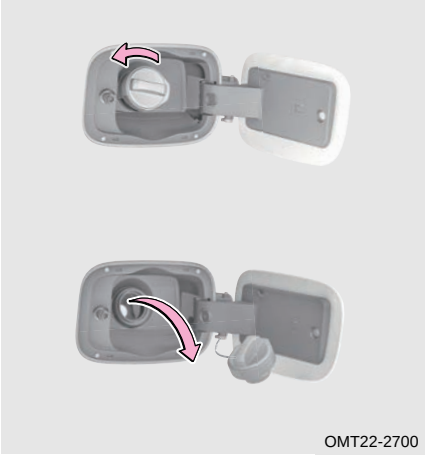
OMT22-2685

1. With vehicle powered on, long press " " button and instrument cluster displays "It is ready to refuel, please refuel" message, and fuel filler door will be unlocked after pressure relief is completed;



OMT22-2690

2. After the fuel filler door is unlocked, push the fuel filler door and it will pop up;



OMT22-2700

3. Turn fuel filler door counterclockwise to remove it;
4. After refueling, turn fuel filler door clockwise until a "click" sound is heard;
5. Close the fuel filler door.

READ

Fuel may pollute environment. Therefore, the sprayed fuel should be collected and disposed by a professional.

⚠ CAUTION

- A slight whooshing sound may be heard when the fuel filler door is opened, this is normal.
- Never add diesel to fuel tank.
- If fuel overflows during refueling, wipe it off immediately to avoid damage to vehicle paint surface.
- After fuel filler door is tightened firmly and release your hand, the cap will turn slightly in the opposite direction which is normal.
- To prevent damage to the cap, apply force only in the direction of rotation. Do not pull or pry the cap.

⚠ WARNING

- Before refueling, close all windows and cut off the power supply of vehicle and close all doors.
- Make sure that the fuel filler door is tightened securely, to prevent accident caused by fuel spillage.
- As gasoline is extremely flammable, smoking is prohibited when refueling, and there must be no other sparks or open flames.
- Do not inhale vaporized fuel, as the fuel contains substances that are harmful for the health.
- Do not attempt to continue to refuel after the fuel gun is automatically turned off. Otherwise, the fuel tank may be too full, causing fuel to overflow the fuel tank, which can easily cause fire, explosion and serious injury.
- Do not remove the fuel filler door quickly when opening it. In hot weather, if cap is removed suddenly, high-pressed fuel vapor may be ejected from the filler neck and cause personal injury.
- After exiting the vehicle and before opening the fuel filler door, touch an unpainted metal surface to discharge any static electricity. It is important to discharge static electricity before refueling, because sparks resulting from static electricity can cause fuel vapors to ignite while refueling.

DRIVING VEHICLE

4-1. Starting Vehicle

Before Starting Vehicle..... 144

Vehicle Power-on 144

Vehicle Power-off 146

Engine Self-maintenance 147

4-2. Automatic Transmission

Automatic Transmission 147

4-3. Intelligent Timely All-wheel-drive System

Intelligent Timely All-wheel-drive System 149

Driving Mode 150

4-4. Electric Power Steering (EPS) System

4-5. Brake System

Electric Parking Brake (EPB) System..... 156

Auto Hold..... 158

Foot Brake 159

Brake System Operation Descriptions 160

4-6. Airbag

Airbag 161

Proper Usage and Precautions for Airbag 162

4-1. Starting Vehicle

Before Starting Vehicle

1. Check around the vehicle before getting in;
2. Adjust seat position, seatback angle, head restraint height and steering wheel angle;
3. Adjust angle of the inside and outside rear view mirrors;
4. Turn off any unnecessary lights and electrical appliances;
5. Fasten the seat belts;
6. Check that the vehicle is parked;
7. Check that the shift position is switched to P;
8. Depress the brake pedal and start vehicle, check if malfunction indicator and other indicators on instrument cluster are normal. If it is abnormal, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

Vehicle Power-on

Normal power-on

Unlock the vehicle, open the driver door, and the vehicle is automatically powered on.

> ⚠ CAUTION
>
> After vehicle is powered on, do not use electrical appliances of vehicle for a long period of time. When low battery is prompted, charge in time or use engine to charge by starting vehicle, otherwise the vehicle may not start due to power battery loss. When vehicle fails to start due to serious loss of power battery, it can be restarted by connecting the charging gun for charging. If it still cannot be started, please contact authorized service station.

Normal starting

Enter the vehicle when carrying the smart key on your person or place NFC card key (if equipped) in NFC recognition area (phone wireless charging area), depress the brake pedal, "READY" indicator on instrument cluster comes on, the vehicle enters "ready to drive" state. Shift the gear position to drive the vehicle.

> READ
>
> When vehicle is in READY state, the motor is silent, confirm shift position before leaving vehicle.

Starting vehicle by NFC card key (if equipped)

OMT22-3035

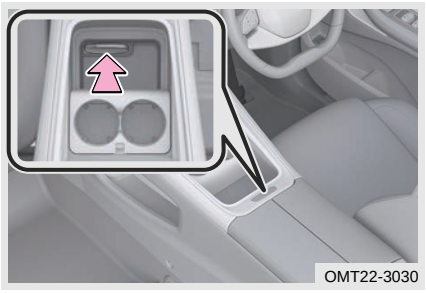
After unlocking the vehicle by NFC card key, user depresses brake pedal within 3 minutes to start the vehicle. After 3 minutes, place NFC card key in wireless charging sensing area inside the vehicle and then the vehicle can be started.

⚠ CAUTION

- Always keep card in wireless charging sensing area to get the best experience when using NFC card key.
- When using phone wireless charging function, check if there is NFC card key or other NFC cards (entrance card/transportation card/bank card, etc.) placed in the sensing area, if so, take away card to avoid affecting phone charging function.

Starting in emergency

When smart key battery is low or signal is seriously interfered, the vehicle cannot be started. Start according to following steps:


OMT22-3030

1. Lay smart key into auxiliary fascia console storage box with front side facing up (as shown in figure); Do not depress brake pedal at this time;
2. With vehicle powered on, carry the smart key on your person and enter the vehicle, depress brake pedal, "Ready To Drive" is displayed on instrument cluster and " READY " green indicator remains on.

⚠ CAUTION

- Avoid engine idling for a long time as much as possible.
- When the vehicle is started, do not depress accelerator pedal when vehicle is started in any situations.
- Do not run cold engine at high speed or under high load (It is normal that the engine runs at high speed when the power battery of vehicle is depleted and vehicle is started in Sport mode).

⚠ WARNING

- It is recommended to allow engine to idle for a short time or drive at low speed for a certain distance after running engine at high speed or under high load for a long time.
- Do not touch high temperature components (such as engine, exhaust pipe, radiator) immediately after engine has just stopped, otherwise, burns may occur.
- It is forbidden to park on dry leaves, hay or other flammable materials or allow the vehicle to idle for a long time. When engine is running or the vehicle is just stopped, high temperature of exhaust pipe may cause fire.
- Slow down as much as possible before turning off power forcibly, the power assist of brake and steering wheel will lose, resulting in more effort when depressing brake pedal and heavier when turning steering wheel, otherwise it may cause personal injuries.

Vehicle Power-off

Normal power-off

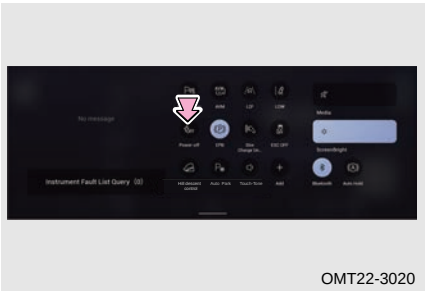
With vehicle in READY and gear position in P, the driver door is opened, and gets up and leaves the driver seat, "READY" indicator on instrument cluster goes off, the vehicle exits "ready to drive" state.

With the vehicle power-on or in READY, if the driver seat is not occupied, all four doors are closed, and gear position is in P, the following operations will power off the vehicle:

- Lock and power off the vehicle with NFC card key (if equipped).
- Lock and power off the vehicle with smart key.

Power-off switch

When the vehicle is in a stationary state for a long time, perform power-off through the vehicle power-off switch in the head unit display to reduce the loss of vehicle energy consumption.



OMT22-3020

When the vehicle is in a stationary state and the shift position is in P/N, press the vehicle power-off switch and confirm to turn off power supply of the vehicle according to the hints on head unit, the vehicle is powered off.

Automatic power-off

With vehicle powered on, driver seat not occupied, four doors closed, and gear position in P, the vehicle is powered off automatically after parking for about 90 minutes.

> ⚠ CAUTION
>
> After the vehicle is stopped, the driver should always make the gear position in the P position through the P button before getting off, and then open the door and get off after determining the completion of the parking to prevent the vehicle from accidentally sliding.

> ⚠ WARNING
>
> - Do not touch high temperature components (such as engine, exhaust pipe, radiator) immediately after engine has just stopped, otherwise, burns may occur.
> - It is forbidden to park on dry leaves, hay or other flammable materials or allow the vehicle to idle for a long time. When engine is running or the vehicle is just stopped, high temperature of exhaust pipe may cause fire.

Engine Self-maintenance

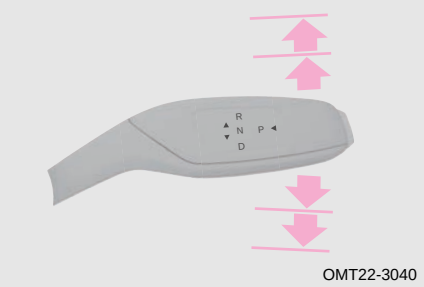
In order to keep the engine in good condition for a long period of time without use, the engine will automatically run for a few minutes at preset intervals. Corresponding reminder "Engine enters auto maintenance mode" will display on instrument cluster, and it disappears automatically after 5 seconds.

> READ
>
> Do not stall the engine during engine auto maintenance. Auto maintenance will not be possible when fuel level is too low.

4-2. Automatic Transmission

Automatic Transmission

The automatic transmission belongs to the electronically controlled automatic transmission.



Start vehicle, fully depress brake pedal, move column shift up/down to switch gear position.

⚠ CAUTION
When transmission malfunction indicator of instrument cluster remains on, drive the vehicle to a safe area, stop and power off the vehicle, and contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

Shifting operation

■ D (Forward driving gear)

When the vehicle is stationary, depress brake pedal, push down column shift to the bottom and release, when instrument cluster displays D, it indicates that the vehicle is shifted to D.

READ
When the vehicle is in P, push down column shift once or push it to the bottom and release it, when instrument cluster displays D, it indicates that the vehicle is shifted to D.

■ R (Reverse gear)

When the vehicle is stationary, depress brake pedal, push up column shift to the top and release, when instrument cluster displays R, it indicates that the vehicle is shifted to R.

■ P (Parking gear)

When the vehicle is stationary, depress brake pedal, when shift position is not in P, press the button on right side of column shift to switch to P directly and exit the corresponding R/N/D.

■ N (Neutral gear)

When the vehicle is stationary, depress brake pedal and shift the shift position to N by following operations:

- In D/P, push up column shift once to N.
- In R, push down column shift once to N.

⚠ CAUTION

- Never use P instead of parking brake.
- Do not coast vehicle in N. Otherwise, the transmission will be damaged.
- Never shift to P when the vehicle is not stopped steadily. This may lead to abnormal sound or damage to the transmission.
- Do not shift the shift position out of D while the vehicle is moving forward. Otherwise, the transmission may be damaged.
- Do not shift the shift position out of R while the vehicle is moving backward. Otherwise, the transmission may be damaged.
- When vehicle malfunctions due to insufficient battery, even depressing brake pedal, shifting to other position from P is impossible. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- When vehicle speed reaches a certain speed, shift position can not be shifted between D and R by operating column shift. The purpose is to ensure your driving safety. Please feel free to use it.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not tow the vehicle for a long distance or at a high speed. For detailed information about vehicle towing, refer to "Vehicle Towing".
- When the shift position is in N, make sure the parking brake is applied or the brake pedal is depressed, otherwise an accident may occur.

Fail-safe mode

When malfunction occurs in transmission system, fail-safe mode will be automatically activated, transmission cannot operate normally, and vehicle will slow down and be driven at low speed.

⚠ CAUTION

Long distance driving is not allowed in fail-safe mode. Otherwise, transmission will be damaged, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

4-3. Intelligent Timely All-wheel-drive System

Intelligent Timely All-wheel-drive System

Intelligent timely all-wheel-drive system distributes engine power to all four wheels at the same time.

Intelligent timely all-wheel-drive system is suitable for snowy, sand, muddy and off-road. Different engine power is automatically distributed to the front and rear wheels, and this creates some advantages, for example, it will increase traction when slipping and make acceleration more stable.

CAUTION

- For temporary malfunction, " " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on; For permanent malfunction, " " red indicator on instrument cluster remains on, instrument cluster displays "4WD system is malfunctioning, please contact service station" at the same time.
- When 4WD system is malfunctioning, electronic stability control system will sound an alarm, only ABS is retained.
- When " " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on, the vehicle will be driven with 2WD state to protect your normal driving.

Driving Mode

The vehicle is equipped with 7 driving modes: ECO (Economic mode)/ NORMAL (Normal mode)/SPORT (Sport mode)/SNOW (SNOW mode)/MUD (Muddy mode)/SAND (Sand mode)/OFF-ROAD (Off-road mode), and 4WD system operates intelligently in all modes to automatically switch between 2WD and 4WD. You can also set the driving mode manually according to judgment for road conditions, OFF-ROAD will help you get out of trouble in complicated road conditions.

OMT22-3070

Set driving mode in unit head, the corresponding mode icon on instrument cluster will comes on accompanied by voice reminder to prompt you that driving mode is switched successfully.

- NORMAL mode: Standard mode controls power and fuel consumption mode to ensure stable power and good fuel economy.
- SPORT mode: Sport mode allows vehicle handling, controllability and power performance to enhance, enhancing vehicle sport characteristics.
- ECO mode: Economic mode controls engine speed with proper gear position to reduce unnecessary fuel consumption.
- SNOW mode: Snow mode is suitable for hard but smooth road surface, including snow, ice, grass, gravel road, etc.
- MUD mode: Mud mode is suitable for muddy and uneven road surfaces with a smooth and shallow mud layer or rut.
- SAND mode: Sand mode is suitable for driving in soft and dry sand, beach or desert.

- OFF-ROAD mode: Off-road mode improves the acceleration performance, enhancing and the vehicle trafficability. Suitable for mountain off-road and the vehicle out of trouble.

READ

- In SNOW (SNOW mode)/MUD (Muddy mode)/SAND (Sand mode)/OFF-ROAD (Off-road mode), idling stop-start system will be turned off by default.
- When windows and moon roof are open, rainfall may drench the interior equipment and cause damage to the vehicle. Always keep windows and moon roof closed during off-road driving.
- Acceleration is soft using ACC system in ECO (Economic mode)/SNOW (-SNOW mode)/MUD (Muddy mode). Acceleration is faster using ACC system in SPORT (Sport mode)/OFF-ROAD (Off-road mode).

CAUTION

- When electronic stability control system is turned off, even if SNOW (-SNOW mode)/MUD (Muddy mode)/SAND (Sand mode)/OFF-ROAD (Off-road mode) is selected, the vehicle skid limiting ability and get out of trouble ability is reduced.
- Do not drive the vehicle in sand or muddy roads for a long time or let tires in slippery state for a long time, overheat protection function of 4WD system may be triggered under these operations, "" yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on, exit 4WD state and switch to 2WD to protect drive train; Please stop the vehicle to dissipate heat as soon as possible under the condition of safety and wait for a few minutes until the overheat protection function is exited (it is recommended to wait for a few minutes after the alarm is eliminated, so that the temperature of the 4WD system can be lower, and the performance can be better restored) before entering 4WD system again. Please contact authorized service station if the alarm cannot be eliminated for a long time.

Stuck vehicle

The vehicle may continue to sink if incorrect operation is performed when repeatedly driving back and forth to get out of stuck, at this time, ask for external rescue.

■ When wheel does not rotate smoothly

1. Shift the shift position to R;
2. Carefully depress accelerator pedal and move backward along the original lane;
3. Carefully dig out all wheels and then make sure that no other parts are buried in the sand;

4. If the wheel does not operate, place tree branch, foot mat or sackcloth under the front part of tires to improve ground adhesion and drive force.

■ Repeatedly driving back and forth to get out of stuck

1. Straighten the steering wheel;
2. Move the vehicle backward until wheels start to slip;
3. Immediately shift to 1st gear and drive forward until wheels start to slip again;
4. Repeatedly perform this backward and forward driving operation until rotations of wheels are enough to move the vehicle backward and forward repeatedly to get out of stuck.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not allow wheels to slip for a long time, doing so may cause the vehicle to continue to sink.
- Do not stay in front of or behind the vehicle, especially when trying to drive a stuck vehicle.
- If a stuck vehicle suddenly moves, it may run over someone who stays in front of or behind the vehicle.
- A slipping wheel may cause rocks, branches, pieces of wood or other objects under the wheel to accelerate sharply, which could cause fatal injuries.

Before off-road driving

Before off-road driving, it is necessary to learn how to operate the vehicle in different off-road situations and how to safely pass through uneven off-road areas. Off-road driving requires different ability and behavior than driving on the road. The safety of driver and passenger depends on knowledge, skill and caution of driver.

⚠ WARNING

- Off-road driving always avoids bias driving on slopes.
- Always make the speed and driving style consistent with the current off-road situation.
- Carefully explore the route on foot before driving into an unknown off-road area.
- Do not drive too fast (especially when turning) or perform extreme driving operation.
- Always match the speed and driving style to load, visibility, off-road and weather conditions.
- Be sure to drive at the appropriate speed according to the actual off-road conditions, road conditions, traffic and weather.
- In the event of a turnover, a person who unfastens seat belt may be more likely to die than a person fastening seat belt.
- Luggage and other items being transported on the roof will further raise the center of gravity, increasing the risk of turnover.
- A vehicle with a high center of gravity has a greater risk of turnover than a "normal" passenger vehicle that is not suitable for off-road driving during driving.
- Always straighten front wheels if the vehicle is lifted. If the vehicle contacts with the road in an impact manner, the vehicle may roll over.
- Cruise control system is used for road driving and is not suitable for off-road driving at all, the vehicle may even be dangerous if the system is used for off-road driving.
- Always perform off-road driving with special care and foresight. Excessive speed or mishandling may result in serious injury and damage to the vehicle.
- Do not drive over river levee, ramp or slope at excessive speed. This may cause the vehicle to lift, making it impossible to turn and lose control of the vehicle.
- Do not choose an unsafe route or put driver and occupants in danger due to adventure. When there are doubts about the safety of a route, go back and choose another route.
- Even if it seems easy for off-road driving, it can actually be difficult and dangerous, and may put the driver and occupants at risk. It is best to explore off-road area on foot beforehand.
- Off-road area that does not seem dangerous can be fraught with danger. Pits, ditches, deep pits, deep valleys, obstacles, shallow banks, and loose muddy ground are often not easily identified and are completely or partially covered by water, grass, or tree branches scattered on the ground. Explore off-road area on foot if necessary.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not leave the vehicle through a door facing downhill if the vehicle is stopped sideways on a slope. The center of gravity created by the vehicle and its load (occupants and load) may shift, causing the vehicle to roll over and down the slope. Leave the vehicle steadily through the door facing uphill every time.
- Off-road area that does not seem dangerous can be fraught with danger. Pits, ditches, deep pits, deep valleys, obstacles, shallow banks, and loose muddy ground are often not easily identified and are completely or partially covered by water, grass, or tree branches scattered on the ground. When driving through this off-road area, causing accidents, serious injuries and vehicle failures.

After off-road driving

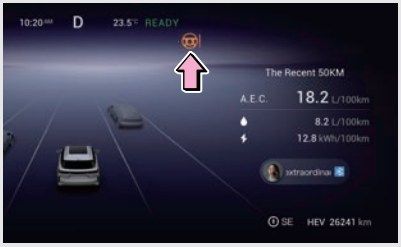
1. Remove the towing eyelet and tire chains if necessary.
2. Turn off OFF-ROAD (off-road mode).
3. Remove heavy dirt from radiator grille and vehicle deck board.
4. Check the engine compartment and check if the dirt affects engine operation.
5. Clean turn signal light, lighting devices, license plate and all window glasses.
6. Check tires, shock strut and axles for damage, and remove large dirt, stones and foreign objects embedded in the tire pattern.
7. Check the vehicle deck board and remove all objects stuck in brakes, wheels, chassis, exhaust devices and engine, such as branches, leaves or wooden blocks. If damage or leakage is found, please contact authorized service station immediately.

⚠ WARNING

- Objects stuck under the vehicle deck board are dangerous. After each off-road driving, it is necessary to check if there is any object stuck under the vehicle deck board.
- Do not drive if there are objects stuck in the deck board, brakes, wheels, chassis, exhaust devices or engine.
- Flammable materials such as dry leaves or branches may catch fire when they come into contact with hot components. A fire may cause serious injury.
- The stuck objects may cause damage to fuel pipes, brakes, seals, and other chassis components. It may lead to accidents and cause the vehicle to run out of control.

4-4. Electric Power Steering (EPS) System

Electric power steering system uses torque generated by motor as power source of steering system, instead of assisting method using in general vehicle, that is, hydraulic pump is driven by engine.



OMT22-4090

- After the vehicle battery is powered off and reconnecting and starting, due to the initialization of electric steering system angle, " " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on, turn the steering wheel left and right to the limit position to complete the angle reset, and the " " yellow indicator turns off.
- When there is a fault in electric power steering system, " " red indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

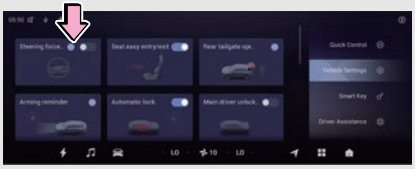
⚠ CAUTION

- Frequent handling and rotation of steering wheel over long periods of time may damage the mechanism in EPS system.
- Never rotate the steering wheel frequently and rapidly from left to right in the parking idling state to prevent the system from overheating. If the system overheats, heavy steering will occur, which is normal. Stop rotating the steering wheel and switch the vehicle power to off state until the system cools down.

⚠ WARNING

After EPS system is disabled, although the vehicle still has the conventional steering capability, it should be driven with caution. At this time, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

■ Steering power mode



OMT22-4100

EPS system is equipped with two modes (SPORT/COMFORT). The default EPS system steering mode is comfort mode when the vehicle first works.

Compared with the comfort mode, steering power of sport mode is reduced and the hand feels calm.

4-5. Brake System

Front/rear wheels of the vehicle adopt disc brake. Electric parking brake is adopted for the rear wheel.

Electric Parking Brake (EPB) System

EPB system is a technology that integrates temporary braking during driving and long-time braking after stopping, and implements parking brake by electronic control. This technology replaces the traditional hand-brake.

OMT22-3080

Power on the vehicle, depress brake pedal, press the parking brake switch on the swipe down screen of head unit system, " Ⓟ " red indicator on instrument cluster goes off, indicating that parking brake function has been released.

When the parking brake function is released, press parking brake switch, " Ⓟ " red indicator on instrument cluster remains on, indicating that parking brake function is activated.

OMT22-3050

Depress brake pedal, and park the vehicle smoothly. Press P button to shift the gear position to P, " Ⓟ " red indicator on instrument cluster remains on, indicating that parking function is activated.

Releasing parking brake automatically

- Fasten driver's seat belt and close driver door. When the vehicle is shifted from P to D/R on flat road, electric parking brake is released automatically, and "Ⓟ" red indicator on instrument cluster goes off.
- With vehicle stopped on a slope, driver seat belt fastened and driver door closed, when the shift position is shifted from P to D/R, depress accelerator pedal deeply, and parking brake can be released automatically only when driving force is greater than slipping force.

⚠ CAUTION

- When performing automatic releasing of electric parking brake, fasten the driver’s seat belt and close the driver door. Failure to do so may cause the automatic releasing conditions of parking brake cannot be satisfied.
- When enabling and releasing electric parking brake, "whooshing" sound may be heard from rear part of vehicle. This is the working sound emitted by parking brake and is normal.
- While depressing brake pedal for releasing or applying parking brake, brake pedal may push slightly up or down, just depress the brake tightly.
- Electric parking brake cannot be released when battery is discharged, and jumper cables can be used to start the engine. For details, refer to "Jump-starting".
- If vehicle coasts after stopping within a short period, system will increase parking force automatically to hold it for safety. When brake force increasing, system makes operation sound. This is normal.

⚠ WARNING

To avoid accidental vehicle movement, in auto hold state, confirm shift position before depressing accelerator pedal to start off.

■ Emergency braking function

If foot brake fails, press P button on the right side of column shift continuously to forcibly apply brake by parking brake. In process of emergency braking, "Ⓟ" red indicator on instrument cluster flashes. Release the P button to exit emergency braking.

⚠ WARNING

- When emergency braking function is activated, it will drone. This is normal.
- When applying emergency braking, electric parking brake will apply brake at constant deceleration which is deviated from driver's desired deceleration and braking distance will be different.
- Use this function cautiously during normal driving. When driving, passengers should not touch button accidentally. Otherwise, it may cause an accident.
- When foot brake fails or brake pedal is blocked, emergency braking function can be used in an emergency. ESP system and its components cannot exceed road traction physical limit, turning on emergency braking function when driving on curved road, dangerous road, heavy traffic road or in severe weather may lead in drifting, side-slipping or pulling over, be careful not to cause an accident.

Auto Hold

Auto hold function is used to prevent vehicle from rolling when the vehicle is stationary and starts off.

OMT22-3090

Auto hold function enabling conditions: Vehicle is started, driver door is closed properly and driver side seat belt is fastened.

Turning on auto hold function: When auto hold conditions are met, perform downward sliding operation on the head unit screen, press auto hold switch to turn on this function, "Ⓐ" white indicator on instrument cluster comes on and system enters auto hold mode.

Activating auto hold function:

- When auto hold function is turned on and auto hold operation conditions are met, gear position is in D, depress brake pedal to slow down and stop the vehicle, then auto hold function is activated, green indicator "Ⓐ" comes on.
- Depress brake pedal with vehicle stationary, when auto hold operation conditions are met and auto hold function is turned on, auto hold function is activated automatically, green indicator "Ⓐ" comes on.

Turning off auto hold function:

- When auto hold function is turned on, click auto hold button on quick menu screen to turn off this function, the system exits auto hold mode.

- When auto hold is activated, click auto hold button on quick menu screen to turn off this function. "Ⓐ" green indicator on the instrument cluster goes off. The system exits auto hold mode and switches to electric parking brake system for parking.

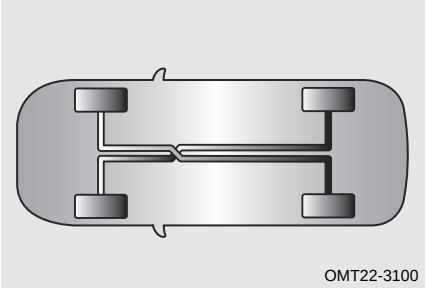
Auto hold release function:

- When the vehicle applies the auto hold brake, the driver fastens seat belt, closes the door, depresses the accelerator pedal. The system detects the driver's intention to leave and the auto hold will be released automatically. On a slope, greater traction is required to avoid slipping.

⚠ CAUTION

- Turn on auto hold switch after vehicle starts, if driver door is not closed or driver side seat belt is not fastened, auto hold system cannot be entered.
- After auto hold function is turned on, auto hold system will automatically stop the vehicle after the vehicle comes to a complete stop from motion state by foot brake, but the shift position is still in D. It is recommended to shift to N for short parking and shift to P for long parking.
- When auto hold function is turned on, open driver door or unfasten driver side seat belt to exit auto hold function, close the door or fasten the belt again to turn on the function again.
- When auto hold function is activated, unfasten driver side seat belt or open driver door to switch auto hold to electric parking.
- Turn off auto hold function before driving into car wash.
- Always park vehicle correctly according to safety regulations and take care to avoid hurt yourself and pedestrians.
- If accelerator pedal is depressed very slowly, auto release of auto hold delays. This is normal.

Foot Brake



OMT22-3100

Brake system adopts X type dual circuit brake system. This system is a hydraulic system which has two independent sub systems. If one of the sub systems does not work, the other can still achieve brake function. However, the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual and the braking distance will increase. Besides, vehicle may depart from the lane. In addition, brake system malfunction indicator comes on.

⚠ WARNING
Do not drive vehicle under conditions in which only one brake system works. Please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

■ Brake system malfunction indicator

When there is fault in brake system, indicator " (!) " on instrument cluster remains on. There is fault in brake system, check brake fluid level. Add brake fluid when it is lower than MIN line. If the cause cannot be determined, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

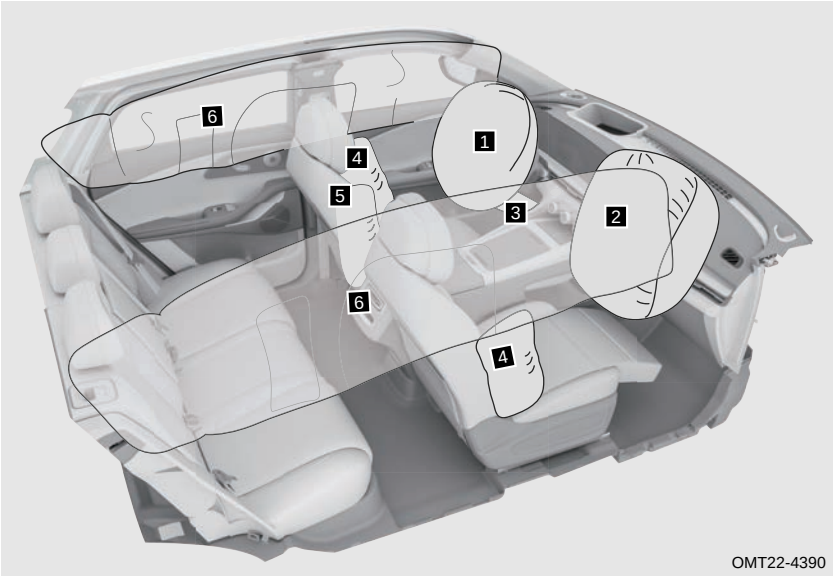
Brake System Operation Descriptions

- It is normal that brake system makes an operation sound sometimes. But metal-friction or whistling sounds for a long time, brake linings may be seriously worn. Please contact authorized service station for replacement immediately.
- If constant jitter or vibration can be felt through steering wheel when braking, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- New brake lining requires a break-in period to achieve optimum braking effect. Braking effect in the first 200 km is not optimal. In this case, depress brake pedal more firmly to compensate braking effect.
- Wear condition of brake lining depends largely on its working conditions and driving style. For vehicles mainly used in city traffic, frequent starting and stopping will make working condition of brake lining worsen. Therefore, please go to authorized service station according to specified maintenance mileage to check thickness of brake linings or replace it as needed.
- When driving downhill, shift to a low gear to make full use of engine braking effect and avoid continuous use of brakes. Failure to do so may cause the brakes to overheat and braking distance will become longer, and the brakes may even temporarily lose its effectiveness in a serious case.
- A wet brake may cause abnormal vehicle deceleration or pull to one side when braking. Depress brake pedal slightly to test effectiveness of brakes. After driving through deep water, keep a safe vehicle speed and depress brake pedal slightly until braking function is restored.

4-6. Airbag

Airbag

In the event of severe frontal/side collision and deployment conditions are met, the airbags deploy and operate together with seat belts to protect occupants in vehicle. Airbags can inflate a bag with airs between occupants and interior trim, so that occupants pushes on the bag to avoid or reduce the second impact, thus reducing the risk of occupants and driver injury.



1 Driver airbag
2 Front passenger airbag
3 Driver knee airbag
4 Front seat side airbag
5 Front seat center airbag
6 Curtain side airbag

■ Driver airbag and front passenger airbag

In an event of a severe frontal collision and airbag deployment conditions are met, driver airbag, front passenger airbag and seat belts work together to help reduce the impact to the head or chest of driver and front passenger caused by hitting the interior component.

■ Front seat side airbag

In an event of a severe side collision and airbag deployment conditions are met, front seat side airbag can help protect the torso position of driver and front passenger.

■ Driver knee airbag

In an event of a severe frontal and side collision and airbag deployment conditions are met, driver knee airbag protects driver knee and isolates the knee from direct impact with the panel.

■ Curtain side airbag

In an event of a severe side collision and airbag deployment conditions are met, curtain side airbag can help protect head of outside seat occupant.

■ Front seat center airbag

In an event of a severe side collision and airbag deployment conditions are met, front seat center airbag can help protect heads of driver and front passenger.

Proper Usage and Precautions for Airbag

■ Malfunction indicator

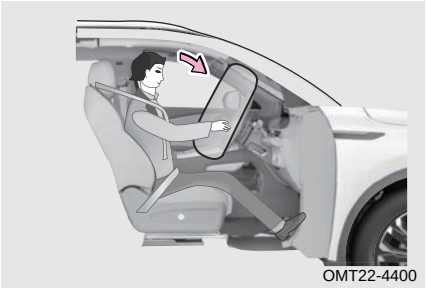
If any of the followings occurs, it indicates that the airbag is malfunctioning. Please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible:

- Power on the vehicle, airbag malfunction indicator on instrument cluster does not come on, remains on or flashes.
- Airbag malfunction indicator comes on or flashes while driving.

■ Airbag deployment

- After an airbag is inflated, it will discharge gas quickly, and some parts of the airbag module may generate heat. Do not touch any related parts at this time.
- After the airbag is inflated, the vehicle automatically unlocks doors, illuminates interior lights, and turns on hazard warning lights.
- In addition, when airbag is discharging gas, some smoke and dust will be emitted. For people with asthma or other respiratory problems, respiratory system could be stimulated. Therefore, all people in vehicle should get out as soon as possible, or open windows to breathe fresh air and seek medical treatment if necessary.
- If the areas where the airbags are stored (such as the steering wheel and instrument panel) are damaged or cracked, please go to the authorized service station for replacement as soon as possible.

■ Using airbag correctly


OMT22-4400

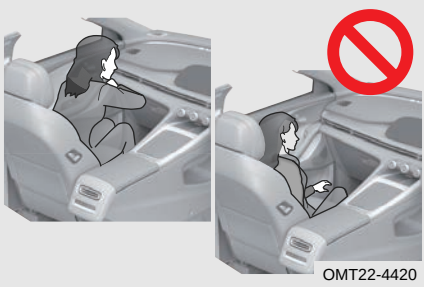
The airbag works together with seat belt to protect safety of driver and passengers. However, airbag is not a substitute for seat belt. In addition, the airbag will deploy only when the collision degree of vehicle reaches the design condition. In some collisions, the seat belt is the only protective device. Wearing a seat belt during a collision can help reduce the risk of hitting objects inside the vehicle or being thrown out of the vehicle, and effectively protect the occupants and drivers. Therefore, all persons in vehicle should wear seat belts correctly.

- The airbag will generate considerable force at the moment of deployment. In order to avoid injury caused by deployment of the airbag, the driver and occupants must adopt the correct sitting posture, correctly wear the seat belt and adjust their seat position, never get too close to the airbag (such as sitting on the edge of the seat or tilting the body forward). For vehicles equipped with front seat side airbag and curtain side airbag, ensure that the upper limbs of occupants are at a sufficient distance from the side of the vehicle to avoid injury during deployment.
- Airbags and seat belts can provide protection for adults and children those meet safety wearing requirements. For protection of infants and young children. Refer to "Child Restraint System" for details.

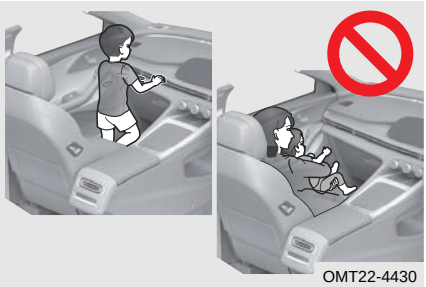
■ Usage precautions for airbag

OMT22-4410

Always keep airbag inflation path clear. It is forbidden to place anything (mobile phone, etc.) between the occupant and the airbag. It is forbidden to fix or place any object on or near the airbag cover. If there is an object between occupant and airbag, the airbag may not deploy according to design path, or the airbag may push object to occupant’s body, causing serious injury or even death.



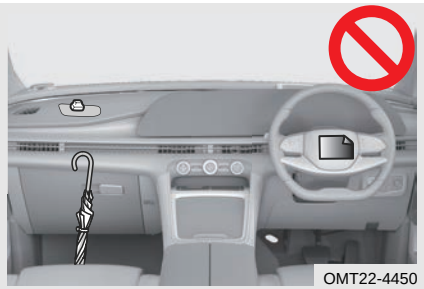
Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean against the instrument panel.



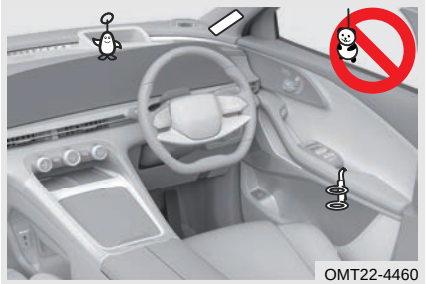
Do not allow a child to stand in front of the front passenger airbag unit or sit on the knees of front passenger.

Do not lean against the door, A pillar, B pillar or C pillar.

Do not allow anyone to kneel on the passenger seat toward the door or put their heads or hands outside the vehicle.



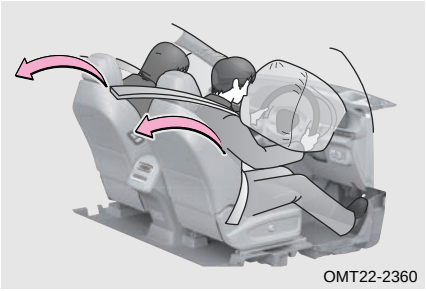
Do not attach anything to or lean anything against the areas such as the instrument panel, steering wheel and lower portion of the instrument panel etc. These items can become projectiles when driver airbag or front passenger airbag deploys.


OMT22-4460

Do not attach anything to areas such as the door, windshield glass, side door glass, A pillar, B pillar, C pillar, roof side rail and assist grip.

Do not strike or apply excessive force to the area of airbag components. Doing so can cause the airbags to malfunction.

■ Airbag deployment conditions

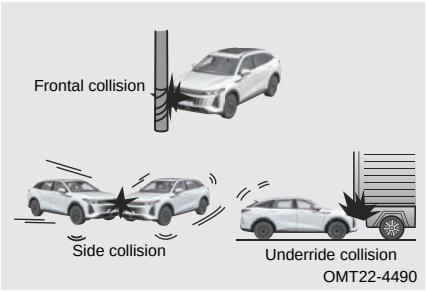

OMT22-2360

In an event of a severe frontal collision, driver airbag, front passenger airbag and driver knee airbag (if equipped) work together with the seat belt to help reduce injuries to the head or chest of driver and front passenger caused by hitting the interior component. The front passenger airbag may be activated even there is no passenger in the front seat.

■ Operating conditions

OMT22-4480

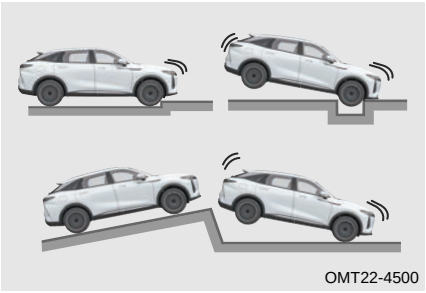
Operating conditions: In general, in an event of frontal collision, driver airbag, front passenger airbag and driver knee airbag (if equipped) will deploy if the deceleration of vehicle exceeds the designed threshold level.



Driver airbag, front passenger airbag and driver knee airbag (if equipped) will deploy if the severity of the frontal collision is above the designed threshold level, comparable to a certain speed collision when the vehicle impacts straight into a fixed barrier that does not move or deform.

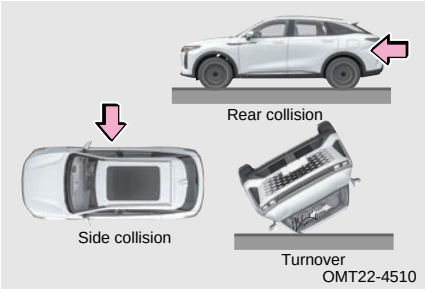
Driver airbag, front passenger airbag and driver knee airbag (if equipped) may not deploy if the front of vehicle hits a telegraph pole slightly, goes under a truck, or if the vehicle is involved in an oblique collision as shown in the illustration.

■ Conditions under which airbag may deploy other than a collision

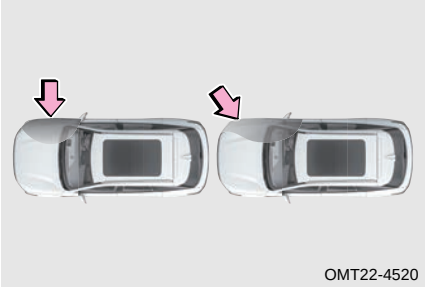


The driver airbag and front passenger airbag may also deploy if a serious impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle as shown in the illustration.

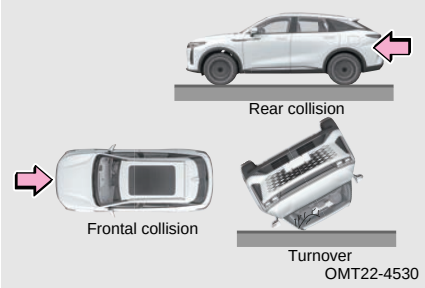
■ Other conditions under which airbag may not deploy during a collision



Driver airbag, front passenger airbag and driver knee airbag (if equipped) may not deploy if the vehicle is subjected to a side or rear collision, turnover or low speed frontal collision.


OMT22-4520

Front seat side airbag and curtain shield side airbag may not deploy if the vehicle is subjected to a collision from side other than passenger compartment or a side collision at certain angles to body as shown in the illustration.



OMT22-4530

Front seat side airbag and curtain side airbag may not deploy if the vehicle is subjected to a front or rear collision, roll-over or low speed side collision.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not use seat cover that blocks seat side, as in the event of an accident, the seat side airbag will not pop up after inflating, which will reduce protection for passengers.
- Do not install accessories on or near front seat center airbag. They may interfere with the normal operation of airbag or injure others when airbag deploys.
- When cleaning seats, do not permeate any fluid into seat, front seat side airbag will be wet, doing so may cause front seat side airbag to fail.

■ Modification and disposal of airbag system components

Do not dispose your vehicle or make any of the following modifications before consulting the authorized service station. Otherwise, airbag may malfunction or deploy (inflate) accidentally, causing death or serious injury.

Never handle with the following components without permission of the authorized service station:

- Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of airbags.
- Repair, modification, removal or replacement of steering wheel, instrument cluster, instrument panel and seats.
- Modification of vehicle suspension system.
- Modification of vehicle front bumper, etc.

DRIVING ASSIST

5-1. Speed Limit Assist System

5-2. Cruise System

Adaptive Cruise Control System (ACC) 172

Active Speed Limit..... 177

Situations Unsuitable for Cruise Control 178

Intelligent Speed Control System (If Equipped) 178

5-3. Hill Descent Control (HDC) System

5-4. Lane Assist System

Lane Departure Warning (LDW) System 180

Lane Departure Prevention (LDP) System 181

Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) System..... 183

5-5. Blind Spot Detection System

Blind Spot Detection (BSD) / Lane Change Assist (LCA) System..... 185

Rear Traffic Crossing Anti-collision (RCTA) System 186

Door Open Warning (DOW) System 186

Rear Collision Warning (RCW) System..... 188

5-6. Head Up Display (HUD) System

5-7. Automatic Emergency Braking System (AEB) and Front Collision Warning System (FCW)

Automatic Emergency Braking System (AEB) and Front Collision Warning System (FCW) 190

5-8. Intelligent Cruise Control System

Traffic Jam Assist (TJA) System and Integrated Cruise Assist (ICA) System 193

5-9. Drive Away Information System

Drive Away Information System (DAI)..... 195

5-10. Intelligent High Beam Assist System (HMA)

5-11. Driving Recorder (DVR)

5-12. Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 201

5-13. Driver Monitoring System (DMS)

Driver Monitoring System (DMS) 204

5-14. Parking Radar System

Parking Radar System 205

Auto Parking Function 207

5-15.Panoramic View Monitor System

Camera Layout 212

Usage of Panoramic View Monitor 213

Switching Panoramic View Monitor System View..... 214

Setting Panoramic View Monitor System..... 216

5-16.Braking Force Control System

Integrated Braking Force Control System 217

Electronic Stability Program System (ESP)..... 217

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 219

Precautions for Operation..... 220

5-17.Intelligent Electronic Control Suspension

5-18.Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicle System (PHEV)

Power Battery..... 223

New Energy Settings 225

Energy Recovery Intensity..... 230

Operating Mode 231

Charging Device 235

Charging Operation 238

AC charging socket electronic lock..... 243

Releasing Charging Gun Manually (Only for AC Charging)..... 244

Charging Precautions 245

External Discharging 246

Low-speed Pedestrian Warning Sound 249

5-1. Speed Limit Assist System

Speed limit assist system is used to remind the various current road speed limit regulations, keep legal speed and observe local traffic laws; After starting navigation on the head unit, the speed limit information of navigation will be integrated to prompt the speed limit.

OMT22-4200

After speed limit sign is recognized by speed limit assist system, " 120 " indicator flashes if the speed exceeds current speed limit for 5 km/h, prompt sound will sound for 2 seconds.

■ Speed limit assist system may not be able to recognize in following conditions:

- Faded signs.
- Signs on curve.
- Rotated or damaged signs.
- High signs on highway.
- Signs that are covered fully/partly, or that in a hidden position.
- Signs covered by frost, snow, dust fully or partly.

READ

SLA can be set in head unit system. For details, refer to "Head Unit System".

⚠ WARNING

- Speed limit assist system based on camera function is affected by weather and light, so the function is not appropriate for all conditions.
- Speed limit assist system is only an assist driving function and cannot completely replace driver's vision. Camera or radar is blocked, map speed limit information is incorrect or missing, complex road conditions and bad weather may affect the normal operation of this function. In any case, drivers should take the initiative to pay attention to their own vehicle speed and road speed limit, and control driving speed.

5-2. Cruise System

Adaptive Cruise Control System (ACC)

Adaptive cruise control system can maintain the speed set by driver and can also follow the vehicle at a set safe distance.

■ Adaptive cruise control system buttons

"三": Following clearance increasing button

Following clearance increasing adjustment.

"二": Following clearance decreasing button

Following clearance decreasing adjustment.

"": Adaptive cruise control system button

Short press to turn ACC ON/OFF; Long press to switch between ACC and TJA/ICA modes.

"": Active speed limit LIM button

Turn active speed limit ON/OFF.

"RES+": RES+ button

Resume the ACC system and adjust speed value and use the last set cruise speed.

"SET-": SET- button

Enter the ACC system and adjust speed value.

READ

- SET- and RES+ are shared buttons for ACC system and ASL.
- When there is a vehicle in front of your vehicle in the same lane, and driving speed is not higher than vehicle set speed, ACC system will control the vehicle to follow vehicle ahead.
- When there is no vehicle in front in the same lane, or there is a vehicle in front in the same lane and driving speed is higher than set speed, your vehicle will drive at the set speed.

■ Entering ACC system

1. Start the vehicle, when the vehicle speed is higher than 15 km/h or there is a vehicle to follow, the vehicle will automatically enter the pre-cruising state, and the "" indicator on combination instrument comes on;

2. During pre-cruising, when the vehicle speed is higher than 15 km/h or there is a vehicle to follow, press "" button to activate ACC, "" indicator on combination instrument comes on.
3. Vehicle speed is higher than 15 km/h or there is a vehicle to follow, press "SET-" button to set the current vehicle speed as the cruise speed.

READ

When applying parking brake and entering pre-cruising state, press "SET-" button, instrument cluster will prompt "Please depress accelerator pedal to activate adaptive cruise control system", driver depresses accelerator pedal slightly to activate ACC according to the prompt.

■ Adaptive cruise control system activation conditions

The following conditions must be met at the same time to activate adaptive cruise control system:

- Vehicle speed is higher than 15 km/h or an object is recognized in front.
- Brake pedal is not depressed (during driving).
- Driver door is closed.
- Driver seat belt is fastened.
- Gear position is in D.
- Parking brake is not applied.
- Hill descent function is not turned on.
- Electronic stability program system is turned on.
- Electronic stability program system is not activated.
- Anti-lock brake system is not activated.

■ Exiting ACC system

When one or more of the following situations occur in cruising process, ACC system will exit:

- Vehicle moves backward.
- Depress brake pedal during vehicle running.
- Apply electric parking during vehicle running.
- Gear position is in a position other than D.
- Hood or door opens.
- Driver seat belt is not fastened.
- Hill descent function is turned on.
- Electronic stability program system operates.
- Anti-lock brake system operates.
- Automatic emergency braking system operates.

- Electronic stability program system is not turned on.
- ACC fault.
- Driver depresses accelerator pedal for more than 15 minutes.

After the above conditions that cause the function to exit are resumed, press "RES+" button, enter cruising state and resume set state before exiting.

■ Speed setting

Shortly press "RES+" button in cruising process, and the set vehicle speed will increase in 1 km/h increment; Long press "RES+" button, and the set vehicle speed will increase in 5 km/h increments. When vehicle speed is higher than 80 km/h, the set speed will increase in 10 km/h increments.

Shortly press "SET-" button in cruising process, set vehicle speed will decrease in 1 km/h decrements; Long press "SET-" button, set vehicle speed will decrease in 5 km/h decrements. When vehicle speed is higher than 80 km/h, set vehicle speed will decrease in 10 km/h decrements.

READ

- For ACC system, the lowest speed setting is 15 km/h and the highest speed setting is 150 km/h.
- Speed will be slightly lower than set speed when driving uphill, and will be slightly higher than set speed when driving downhill.

■ Auto following

If the speed of the vehicle ahead is higher than the set cruise speed of the vehicle, ACC system will continue to maintain the set speed of the vehicle; If the speed of the vehicle ahead is lower than or equal to the set cruise speed of the vehicle, ACC system actively adjusts the speed to maintain the following distance to realize automatic following; After auto following is activated, if the vehicle ahead accelerates, and ACC system will also actively accelerate until the cruise set speed is restored.

■ Stopping and starting function

During following vehicle ahead in ACC mode, if it detects vehicle ahead decreases to stop, the vehicle also decreases to stop. There is a stable recognition function for static obstacles. When the system detects a static obstacle in front, it will actively brake the vehicle.

- Stop following: ACC system drives according to the set following interval during the following process. During the braking and stopping process of vehicle ahead, the vehicle speed decreases gradually, the following distance decreases gradually, and the distance between vehicles remains within the set distance.
- Braking and stopping for stationary obstacles: ACC has stable recognition capability for stationary obstacles. When it detects that there is a stationary obstacle in front, the system will brake and stop according to its own speed and distance from the obstacle.

- Follow to start: If the vehicle ahead starts to drive away within 3 seconds, the vehicle will automatically accelerate to follow vehicle ahead; If the vehicle ahead starts to drive away within 3 seconds to 10 minutes, the ACC will enter the state of waiting to be activated. The driver needs to gently depress the accelerator pedal, press the "RES+" button (restore the cruise speed set before following) or "SET-" button (set the current speed as the cruise speed) to reactivate ACC; If vehicle stops for more than 10 minutes, the ACC will exit, and EPB will be activated automatically for parking.
- Drive away reminder system: When the system detects that the vehicle ahead has left, if the vehicle still hasn't started, the instrument cluster will display a prompt message and give an audible reminder. The user can turn on/off the drive away reminder system in the head unit system.

⚠ WARNING

- ACC system can only achieve limited braking, and cannot perform emergency braking.
- During following vehicle ahead, always pay attention to whether the instrument cluster displays the vehicle target in front. If the instrument cluster does not display the target in front, it means that target in front of ACC system has been lost, the vehicle will start to accelerate according to set speed.

■ Following clearance

Press "亖"/"三" button in cruising process, adjust following clearance which is divided into 5 levels: nearer, near, middle, far, farther.

READ

- Following clearance changes based on speed and increases with speed improving.
- In minimum clearance mode, the distance between the vehicle and vehicle ahead will quite small during following at low speed. For safety, select maximum clearance mode to follow vehicle ahead on slippery road.
- During following vehicle ahead and decreasing, electronic stability program system continuously performs brake and motor will generate operation sound when rotating, this is normal and please drive at ease.

⚠ WARNING

- Please note that any drive behavior must confirm all traffic regulations.
- The driver must control vehicle, operate as needed in the whole driving process;

■ Overtaking

Depresses accelerator pedal to exceed set speed in adaptive cruising process. After accelerator pedal is released, the control state will return to

previous state. During overtaking, if the vehicle is too close to vehicle ahead, instrument cluster will display a prompt message and give an audible reminder to remind driver to avoid.

■ Front target type and distance display

In the process of adaptive cruising, when the system finds the target ahead, it will send the target classification to the instrument cluster for display (the target category includes passenger vehicles, trucks, motorcycles and pedestrians).

■ Intelligent curve speed control

The adaptive cruise system is mainly based on the curve information recognized by the map or the front camera to adjust the driving speed of vehicle before entering the curve in advance, so as to ensure that the speed has dropped to the appropriate speed when entering the curve.

⚠ WARNING
• The driver must control vehicle, drive through curve as slowly as possible in the whole driving process. • While entering a curve, due to limitation of detection target for radar sensor, vehicle ahead on the same driving route may not be detected in time, which requires the driver to be ready to take over the control of the vehicle at any time.

Always read the following precautions when using ACC system:

- ACC system can not violate laws of physics and has certain limitations. Driver must always keep control of the vehicle and be fully responsible for the vehicle.
- If the vehicle is extremely close to vehicle on adjacent lanes, ACC system may select the vehicle as following target.
- Adaptive cruise control system can not respond to stationary objects and vehicles, crosswise vehicles, oncoming vehicles, pedestrians, bicycles and animals.
- When stopping vehicle briefly in ACC mode, driver must confirm that there are no obstacles or other traffic participants such as pedestrians, bicycles and animals in front of the vehicle.
- When ACC system is malfunctioning, " " yellow indicator on instrument cluster comes on. At this time, ACC system function fails, please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
- During ACC system controls vehicle, never inadvertently step on accelerator pedal, otherwise, ACC system will not apply brake to vehicle, driver should always be ready to brake actively to ensure the safety of the vehicle.
- ACC system has a limited brake time reaction; if vehicle ahead occurs sudden brake, another driver cuts in front of the vehicle, the vehicle cuts behind a preceding vehicle, ACC system may not respond or react to

vehicle ahead too slow, in this case, driver should take over the vehicle control in time.

- Driver should adjust the proper clearance from vehicle ahead based on traffic flow and weather condition and is responsible for ensuring that the vehicle can stop safely at any time. In inclement weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.), ACC system may not recognize a vehicle ahead. In this case, ACC system should be turned off.
- ACC system is suitable for use on highways and roads in good condition. It is not recommend for use on narrow roads, mountain roads, hills, tunnels, etc. If using ACC system on curves, target vehicle ahead may be lost or target selection is delayed in ACC mode due to limitation of sensor detection range, in this case, ACC system will control vehicle to accelerate to set speed.
- During the process of following the vehicle ahead to stop, ACC system may not be able to recognize the end of the vehicle, but the lower or upper part of vehicle (such as rear axle of truck that has higher chassis, upper part of lower flatbed trailer). In these cases, system cannot ensure a proper stopping distance or even lead to collision. Therefore, driver must keep a watch on vehicle and be ready to take over vehicle control anytime during this process.
- Two sensors of radar and camera are installed in the front area of vehicle and behind windshield. Please note that view of sensor should not be covered by pollutants, and front or surrounding areas should not be modified or decorated with license plate frames, etc. When sensor is completely covered by snow, ACC system will be exited. Sensors may also be affected by vibration or collision, and system performance may be reduced or its function fails. In this case, please go to authorized service station for recalibration of sensors as soon as possible.
- Precautions mentioned above do not cover all circumstances that may affect system normal operation. System function may fail to bring the expected effect due to other reasons. Driver must always take full responsibility for vehicle control anytime.

Active Speed Limit

■ Entering active speed limit

Shortly press "" button to enter pre-speed limit state; When vehicle speed is higher than 30 km/h, enter speed limit state.

■ Exiting active speed limit

- When vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h, vehicle exits speed limit state and enters pre-speed limit state. When vehicle speed is 30 km/h or more, vehicle enters speed limit state.
- Shortly press "" button to exit speed limit state.

READ

Vehicle is powered off, if it is necessary to disconnect battery positive and negative terminals, always wait for 15 minutes, otherwise, malfunction may be reported by mistake.

Situations Unsuitable for Cruise Control

Do not use cruise control in any of the following situations. Failure to do so may result in loss of vehicle control and could cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

- In heavy traffic;
- On roads with sharp curves;
- On winding roads;
- On slippery roads, such as roads covered with ice or snow;
- Vehicle speed may exceed set speed when driving up and down on a steep slope;
- During emergency towing.

Intelligent Speed Control System (If Equipped)

When the vehicle is in cruising state (ACC or TJA/ICA), it can improves safety, reduces the risk of overspeed/penalty points and reduces the burden on driver by receiving speed limit sign information on road ahead detected by SLA system and combines the information with speed limit information of navigation system, when driver presses the "SET-" button during speed limit pop-up window, uses SLA system speed limit value as cruise target speed to control the vehicle.

READ

- Intelligent speed control system can be set in head unit system. For details, refer to "Head Unit System".
- If the driver does not confirm during the first pop-up window, another pop-up window will appear after 1 minute; thereafter, no more pop-up window will be shown until the new speed limit sign appears (the new speed limit sign is not the same as the previous one).

⚠ CAUTION

Intelligent speed control system is only a assist driving function and cannot completely replace the driver's visual and active braking. The normal operation of this function may be affected by factors such as blocked front camera or radar, incorrect or missing map speed limit information, complex road conditions and bad weather and other conditions. In any case, the driver should actively pay attention to and control the vehicle speed, rather than relying on the system control.

■ Activation conditions of intelligent speed control system

The following conditions must be met at the same time to activate intelligent speed control system:

1. SLA is turned on.
2. 30 km/h ⩽ Speed limit value of SLA system ⩽ 120 km/h.
3. The speed limit value of SLA is 20 km/h higher or lower than the cruising set speed of the vehicle.
4. ACC system is activated.
5. Set speed of ACC ＞ Speed limit value of SLA.

5-3. Hill Descent Control (HDC) System

HDC system can help vehicle drive on steep roads safely under controlled conditions.

After HDC system is turned on, when vehicle is driving down on a steep slope, speed control range for vehicle with automatic transmission is 10 - 35 km/h. When initial speed is lower than the minimum speed, vehicle will control at the minimum speed by default. The current control vehicle speed can be increased or decreased in a given speed range by depressing accelerator or brake pedal.

OMT22-4050

Turn on HDC system:

Vehicle is powered on, HDC system switch is pressed and vehicle speed is not higher than 60 km/h, HDC system turns on, "" green indicator on instrument cluster comes on.

Turn off HDC system:

- When HDC system is on, press HDC system switch, HDC system turns off, "" green indicator on instrument cluster turns off.

- When driving speed is higher than 60 km/h, HDC system turns off.

⚠ CAUTION

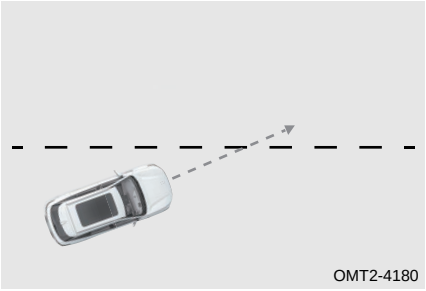
- The speed range at which HDC system is turned on is below 60 km/h.
- When HDC system is working, the ABS system will start automatically if there is a tire lock.
- Before entering steep road, set HDC system so that driver can operate steering wheel without distraction.
- When HDC system is working, if any wheel loses contact with ground, the braking force will be distributed to the wheel with higher adhesion coefficient.
- HDC system actively applies braking force through the operation of electronic stability program system. There will be a hydraulic operation sound when the system is working, which is a normal phenomenon. When the electronic stability program system fails, the HDC system cannot be turned on. Please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- When HDC system is working, the driver needs to be ready to take over the control of vehicle at any time for safety, because the system may be overheated or electronic stability program system may fail in addition to being turned off by the button during operation. At this time, the system will automatically exit the control, and the driver needs to substitute the HDC system to control the vehicle speed in time.

5-4. Lane Assist System

Lane assist system includes lane departure warning system, road assist prevention system and emergency lane keep system, which can assist driver to reduce traffic accident due to lane departure, improving driving safety.

Lane Departure Warning (LDW) System

Lane departure warning system is a system that assists driver to reduce traffic accidents due to lane departure, thus improving driving safety.


OMT2-4180

When vehicle speed is higher than 65 km/h, LDW is activated; When vehicle departs from its lane, sound alarm or steering wheel vibration alarm will be given; When speed is lower than 60 km/h, LDW exits after 3 seconds.

■ Lane departure warning system indicator

- When function is turned on/limited, "" gray indicator on instrument cluster remains on.
- When it is in standby status, "" green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.
- When it is activated, "" green indicator on instrument cluster flashes.
- When there is a fault, "" yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

■ The function will be exited or not activated even if LDW system is enabled in following conditions:

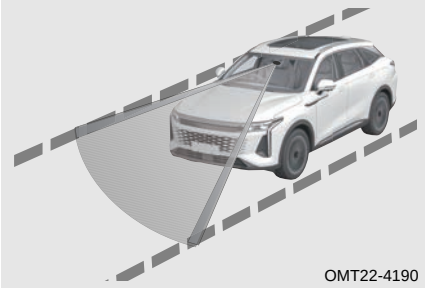
- When changing lanes.
- When turning with high speed.
- When depressing accelerator pedal with excess force.
- When depressing brake pedal with excess force.
- When turning on the hazard light.
- When turning on departure side turn signal light.
- When driving on roads with tight curves.
- When ABS or ESP is activated, the alarm function is suppressed.
- When lane line is too thin, broken, blurred or departure side has no lane line.

⚠ CAUTION

- The alarm function can be activated when the corresponding lane line is detected, and the alarm function is suppressed when the lane lines on both sides are lost.
- If the road has only one lane, when a lane departure occurs, lane departure warning system will only warn on the side of the lane.

Lane Departure Prevention (LDP) System

LDP system monitors the relative position between vehicle and lane line in real-time. When the vehicle is about to deviate from the lane, it controls the lateral movement and assists driver to keep the vehicle in the original lane.


OMT22-4190

When vehicle speed is not lower than 65 km/h, lane assist prevention system is activated. When vehicle speed is lower than 60 km/h, lane assist prevention system exits.

■ Road assist prevention system indicator

- When function is turned on/limited, "" gray indicator on instrument cluster remains on.
- When it is in standby status, "" green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.
- When it is activated, "" green indicator on instrument cluster flashes.
- When there is a fault, "" yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

The function will be exited or not activated even if road assist prevention system is enabled in following conditions:

- Vehicle speed is lower than 60 km/h or higher than 130 km/h;
- Driver turns on the hazard warning light/turn signal light;
- Driver depresses accelerator pedal or brake pedal firmly;
- Lateral swing for vehicle is too fast;
- Vehicle changes lanes;
- Drive on curve with small turning radius;
- Vehicle has just entered the road with lane lines;
- Lane line is too thin, broken, blurred;
- Road width is too narrow or too wide;
- System recognizes that driver does not operate steering wheel for a while;
- Steering wheel is operated by driver when system applies corrective steering intervention;
- Current camera is blocked or the camera cannot detect the lane line target ahead due to weather and environmental factors.

⚠ CAUTION

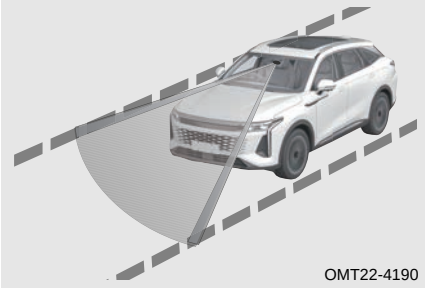
- Driver performs an active control for vehicle when meeting a large curve.
- Driver performs an active control for vehicle when meeting some conditions such as lane increase, lane merger, etc.
- Driver performs an active control for vehicle when meeting complex traffic environment (such as intersection, heavy traffic road, etc).

⚠ WARNING

- Lane assist system just offer assistance to driver. It may not work properly under all driving conditions, weather conditions, traffic conditions or road conditions.
- The driver must control vehicle, monitor management lane assist system and operate as needed in the whole driving process.
- During driving, it is strictly prohibited the driver to hand off steering wheel.

Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) System

When ELK system uses front view multi-function camera and rear corner radar to detect in real time that the vehicle drives, approaches, passes to solid lane marker, road edge, oncoming or overtaking vehicles in adjacent lanes, the vehicle continues to lateral movement or the system controls lateral movement if necessary, which can keep the vehicle in the original lane and assist driver to reduce traffic accident due to lane departure, improving driving safety.



When vehicle speed is no less than 65 km/h and vehicle target is monitored, ELK system enters standby status.

When vehicle speed is no less than 65 km/h and monitored vehicle target is approached, ELK system is activated.

When vehicle speed decreases from 65 km/h to 60 km/h, ELK system enters limit status.

READ

ELK system is turned on by default after the vehicle is powered on.

■ Emergency lane keeping system indicator

- When function is turned on/limited, "" gray indicator on instrument cluster remains on.
- When it is in standby status, "" green indicator on instrument cluster remains on.
- When it is activated, "" red indicator on instrument cluster flashes.
- When there is a fault, "" yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

■ The function will be exited or not activated even if ELK system is enabled in following conditions:

- Vehicle speed is higher than 130 km/h.
- Vehicle changes lanes; When lane is too narrow, too wide and lane line is lost.
- When the braking force is too large.
- When turning with high speed.
- When hazard lights are turned on.
- When double solid line lanes are detected and turn signal light is turned on.

- When EPS system is not ready (such as malfunction).
- When ABS system or ESP system is activated.
- When TJA/ICA system is activated.
- Steering wheel is operated by driver when ELK system applies corrective steering intervention.

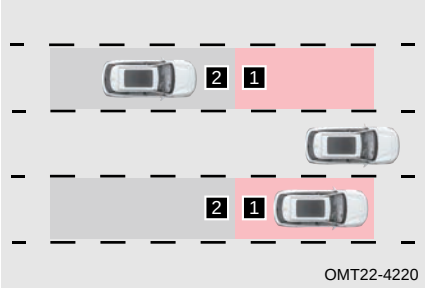
■ Under the following situations, do not use ELK system. Failure to do so may cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury:

- When driving on low-quality section.
- When driving on road construction site.
- When driving on roads with more curves.
- At night and when the surrounding light is dark.
- When driving vehicle in a sporty style.
- In bad weathers (such as rain, snow, fog).

5-5. Blind Spot Detection System

Blind spot detection system has functions such as BSD, LCA and rear traffic crossing anti-collision system. Blind spot detection system is used to monitor presence of moving vehicles in left and right rear areas of your vehicle and inform driver related information to remind the driver for driving safety and lane-changing safety.

Blind Spot Detection (BSD) / Lane Change Assist (LCA) System



Vehicle speed is 15 km/h or more, the blind spot detection/lane change assist function is activated; when vehicle speed is less than 10 km/h, the blind spot detection/lane change assist function automatically will be in standby status.

1 Detection area of blind spot detection system.

BSD system is used to detect other vehicles in "blind spot" of the outside rear view mirror.

2 Vehicle approach alarm, approaching/overtaking vehicle area.

The vehicle approach warning system is used to detect overtaking vehicles or quick approaching vehicles from left and/or right lane behind your vehicle.

■ Indicator

When turning on the blind spot detection/lane change assist function, "" green indicator on instrument cluster comes on.

When there is a fault in blind spot detection/lane change assist function, "" yellow indicator on instrument cluster comes on accompanied with text prompts.

■ Alarm display

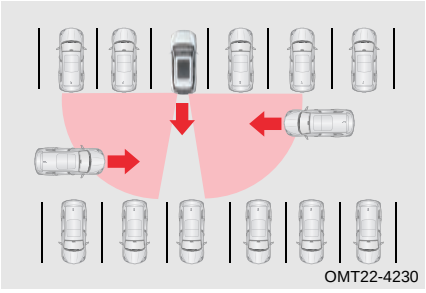
When a target vehicle in left rear/right rear blind spot and alarm conditions are met, left/right outside rear view mirror "" indicator remains on. In this case, if driver operates turn signal light on the alarmed side, secondary alarm triggers. At this time, outside rear view mirror "" indicator blinks, alarm sounds and instrument cluster displays alarm screen.

READ
BSD can be set in head unit system. For details, refer to "Head Unit System".

CAUTION

- Even if vehicle is equipped with BSD, do not neglect and use caution when driving.
- The driver must control vehicle, monitor and manage system, and operate as needed in the whole driving process;
- Blind spot detection system will send light alarm when it senses objects that are stationary on road or roadside (such as guardrails, tunnels, side walls, and parked vehicles).
- When towing or attaching accessories to the rear of vehicle (such as a bicycle carrier), turn off blind spot detection system. Otherwise, radar radio waves will be affected, causing system work abnormally.
- When lots of snow or ice accumulates on rear bumper and near radar sensor, or if driving on snowy road for a long time, system may not operate.

Rear Traffic Crossing Anti-collision (RCTA) System


OMT22-4230

Shift the shift position to R and vehicle speed is less than 10 km/h, rear traffic crossing anti-collision system is activated; In other gear positions, system is in standby status.

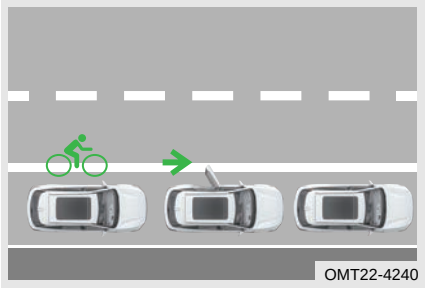
When a target vehicle is approaching from left rear/right rear and alarm conditions are met, left/right outside rear view mirror "" indicator blinks to inform driver there is a target vehicle approaching and risk of collision exists.

READ

rear traffic crossing anti-collision system can be set in head unit system. For details, refer to "Head Unit System".

Door Open Warning (DOW) System

Door open warning system is used to detect the approaching vehicles and bicycles behind in both adjacent lanes through sensor, and send an alarm if there is a risk when opening door, to remind the driver and passenger that do not open the door at this time.



Activation conditions for door open warning function: In any gear position, vehicle is stationary.

■ Front door warning

When there is a vehicle entering the detection area and the alarm conditions are met, if front door on corresponding side is not opened, the outside rear view mirror "" indicator on corresponding side remains on; If front door is opened, the outside rear view mirror "" indicator on corresponding side blinks accompanied with sound alarm.

■ Rear door warning

When there is a vehicle entering the detection area and the alarm conditions are met, if rear door on corresponding side is not opened, the door "" indicator on corresponding side remains on; If rear door is opened, the door ""indicator on corresponding side blinks accompanied with sound alarm.

READ

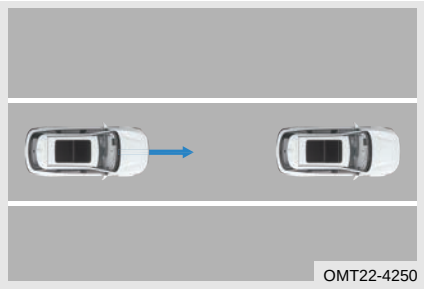
Door open warning system can be set in head unit system. For details, refer to "Head Unit System".

CAUTION

- Door open warning system will be kept in operating condition (except for arming) within 5 minutes after vehicle is powered off. After unlocking from outside, door open warning system will also change to operating condition after any door is opened and closed.
- Do not open doors when indicator on outside rear view mirror or indicator on door is blinking, and open doors after confirming that there is no vehicle behind and it is safe.
- When distance between vehicle behind and your vehicle is short, an alarm will also be given if speed of vehicle behind is low and collision time between vehicle behind and your vehicle is less than specified value.
- When distance between vehicle behind and your vehicle is long, an alarm will not be given if speed of vehicle behind is high and collision time between quickly approaching vehicle behind and your vehicle exceeds specified value.

Rear Collision Warning (RCW) System

After rear collision warning system is turned on, vehicle will send an alarm to remind driver when there is a vehicle approaching rapidly behind and there is a risk of collision with the vehicle.



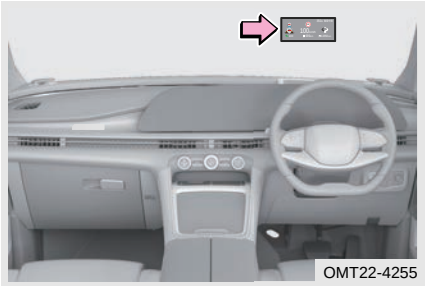
Activation conditions: The vehicle shift position is not in R and the vehicle speed is 15 km/h or more.

READ

Rear collision warning system can be set in head unit system. For details, refer to "Head Unit System".

5-6. Head Up Display (HUD) System

Head Up Display (HUD) System can project driving information (such as vehicle speed, driving mileage), navigation information, driving assistance system and other information on front windshield, which is an effective visual area within the driver's field of vision, so that the driver can see the vehicle information when driving normally without lowering head.


OMT22-4255

Start the vehicle, when head up display is turned on, a virtual image is formed in front of driver's field of vision to display the corresponding vehicle speed, driving mileage and other information.

After head up display system is set to turn on in head unit, the following settings can be perform: Steering wheel adjustment HUD on/off, brightness adjustment, height adjustment, snow mode on/off, HUD information display (-intelligent driving/Bluetooth phone/navigation information) and default setting reset.

READ

- Head up display setting items are different depending on the configuration of the vehicle. Please refer to the actual vehicle configuration.
- It is recommended that the driver uses the snow mode in snowy conditions or when the visibility is not very good.
- It is not recommended to apply film to the front windshield, which will affect the projection effect of HUD. If the projection becomes blurred after applying film, it is recommended to remove the film.

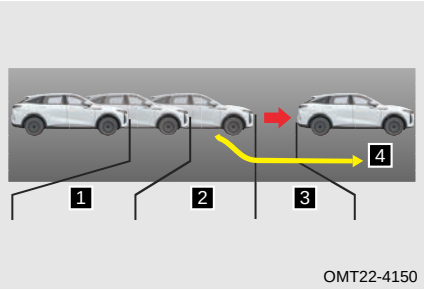
CAUTION

- The front windshield film may affect the brightness of the head up display information.
- When the head up display position is blocked, the head up display system cannot be used.
- If the driver wears polarized sunglasses, there is a risk of not being able to see the head-up display information.
- In some special weather conditions (such as rain, snow, strong sunlight), head up display information may be unclear or disturbed.

5-7. Automatic Emergency Braking System (AEB) and Front Collision Warning System (FCW)

Automatic Emergency Braking System (AEB) and Front Collision Warning System (FCW)

When vehicle is about to hit a vehicle or pedestrian ahead, AEB and FCW work together, sounding an alarm to remind driver, if driver cannot respond quickly enough, vehicle will brake automatically, reducing loss from collision.



1 Start pre-warning before impacting.

2 Start braking partly before impacting.

3 Start braking completely before impacting.

4 If driver reacts correctly (for example, avoid a collision by steering), the following emergency braking is canceled.

READ

- FCW and safe distance warning can be set in head unit system. For details, refer to "Head Unit System".
- Some configurations only work on vehicle targets, not pedestrians or cyclists.

⚠ CAUTION

- When vehicle speed is < 30 km/h, front collision warning system does not send an alarm. When vehicle speed is > 85 km/h, front collision warning system does not send an alarm for static target ahead.
- Driver needs to ensure that seat belts have been fastened, doors are closed. Failure to do so, AEB system does not work.
- Operating speed range of AEB is 4 - 48 km/h for static vehicle target; Operating speed range of AEB is 4 - 85 km/h for moving target vehicle; Operating speed range of AEB is 4 - 65 km/h for pedestrians and cyclists.
- " " yellow indicator on instrument cluster comes on, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- Driver needs to take over vehicle because vehicle does not keep stationary state when vehicle is braked automatically to stop.
- During automatic emergency braking system is activated, driver quickly rotate steering wheel or depress accelerator pedal deeply, automatic emergency braking system will exit.
- Turn on electronic stability control system, front collision warning system and automatic emergency braking system. Otherwise, front collision warning system and automatic emergency braking system do not work.

⚠ WARNING

- The vehicle targets that can be detected by automatic emergency braking system include passenger vehicles, buses, trucks. For some vehicles, such as cement tank trucks, special vehicles with higher or lower chassis, the system has certain limitations in detecting.
- Automatic emergency braking system can only play the best role when it detects some characteristics consistent with normal human walking (such as head swing, arm swing, leg swing). Automatic emergency braking system regards pedestrians who across the vehicle's lane as target, but automatic emergency braking system does not regard pedestrians who walk longitudinally in the lane, walk on a curve, or is blocked by other objects.

⚠ WARNING

- Automatic emergency braking system can only play the best role when it detects body and bicycle contour information as well as normal cycling movements. Automatic emergency braking system does not regard an oncoming cyclist as target.
- The driver must control vehicle, operate as needed in the whole driving process;
- Automatic emergency braking system is not always capable of detecting vehicles, cyclists or pedestrians, and automatic emergency braking system may generate unnecessary braking automatically or not work for a variety of reasons. Automatic emergency braking system is only a driving assistance system to reduce severity of collision, it is not always possible to completely avoid collision in the speed range. Therefore, driver must control vehicle and operate as needed in the whole driving process.

■ For using automatic emergency braking system, please read the following precautions carefully:

- Automatic emergency braking system can not violate laws of physics and has certain limitations. Driver must always keep control of the vehicle and be fully responsible for the vehicle.
- Driver controls speed and the distance from vehicle ahead according to weathers, road surface conditions, traffic conditions, etc.
- Automatic emergency braking system does not react to animals, crossing vehicles, bicycles and pedestrians; When driver has no steering intention, it will not react to oncoming vehicles.
- System performance will be greatly limited for targets that cut into the lane quickly, targets that are detected after the vehicle changes lanes, and targets in curves.
- Fasten all seat belts and secure all loads to avoid danger when automatic emergency braking system is triggered.
- When automatic emergency braking system is malfunctioning, " " yellow indicator on instrument cluster comes on, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- When inspecting the vehicle using a drum tester, front collision warning system and automatic emergency braking system should be turned off.
- When installing non-full size spare tire, it is recommended that customer turns off front collision warning system and automatic emergency braking system, and replace full-size tires of original vehicle in time.
- In some special circumstances, automatic emergency braking system may perform unnecessary warning and braking, such as at track that crosses a road, entering the underground parking lot turning, etc. Some circumstances

will affect and weaken sensor detection, effecting related functions of system, such as tunnel, light of incoming vehicle, reflection of slippery road.

- Two sensors of radar and camera are installed in the front area of vehicle and behind windshield. Please note that view of sensor should not be covered by pollutants, and front or surrounding areas should not be modified or decorated with license plate frames, etc. When sensor is completely covered by snow, system function will be exited. AEB performance may be reduced or its function fails due to sensor vibration or collision. In this case, please contact authorized service station for recalibration of sensors as soon as possible.
- Precautions mentioned above do not cover all circumstances that may affect automatic emergency braking system normal operation. Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB) system function may fail to bring the expected effect due to other reasons. Driver must always assume full responsibility for vehicle control anytime.

5-8. Intelligent Cruise Control System

Traffic Jam Assist (TJA) System and Integrated Cruise Assist (ICA) System

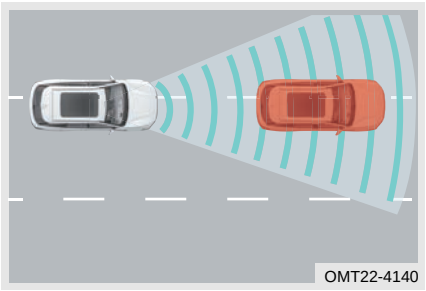
Traffic jam assist system and integrated cruise assist system can reduce driver's workload under monotonous driving environment or busy traffic to provide driving assist. This function mainly uses multi-function camera on front windshield to detect the lane line and performs longitudinal and horizontal controls for vehicle.

OMT22-4110

"": TJA/ICA button

When TJA/ICA is in pre-cruising or cruising state, short press the main button to activate/exit the TJA/ICA; Long press this button to switch between ACC and TJA/ICA modes.

If the TJA/ICA activation conditions are not met, "" gray indicator on instrument cluster remains on; If the TJA/ICA activation conditions are met, "" blue indicator on instrument cluster remains on.



When vehicle speed is less than 60 km/h, the traffic jam assist function operates and vehicle is kept near center of lane. If no lane line is detected, the vehicle will drive by following vehicle target ahead. If neither lane line nor target vehicle is detected, the function will be turned off.

When vehicle speed is between 60 - 130 km/h, ICA function operates, vehicle will be kept near lane center. If no lane line is detected, the function will be turned off regardless of whether there is a target vehicle ahead.

READ

When the intelligent cruise control exit reminder is set to on in the head unit, the instrument cluster will pop up reminder when TJA system and ICA system exit; When Intelligent cruise control exit reminder is turned off, the instrument cluster will not pop up the reminder when the system exits.

■ Exiting function

If one or more of the following situations occur during normal operation of traffic jam assist system and integrated cruise assist system, system function will exit.

- Any exiting condition for ACC exists.
- Overly narrow or wide lanes.
- Too small lane curve radius.
- Lane line is not detected.
- Driver rotates steering wheel actively.
- Hands off steering wheel.
- Turn signal lights are turned on.
- Vehicle speed is lower than 1 km/h.

⚠ CAUTION

- Longitudinal control of traffic jam assist system and integrated cruise assist system is performed by ACC system, lateral control is performed by lane departure warning system, all precautions for ACC system and lane departure warning are also applicable to the system.
- TJA and ICA performance is affected by weather, illumination and lane line clarity. Under the conditions of backlight, sunset, night, snow and ice on the road surface and unclear lane lines due to road wear, the performance will be significantly reduced or even lost.
- When system is malfunctioning, "" yellow indicator on instrument cluster comes on, at this time, TJA system and ICA system function fail, please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair.
- Precautions mentioned above do not cover all circumstances that may affect system normal operation. System function may fail to bring the expected effect due to other reasons. Driver must always take responsibility for the vehicle control.

⚠ WARNING

- Traffic jam assist system and integrated cruise assist system do not provide automatic driving function and does not allow hand off driving. Under the conditions such as turning, crossing, merging and vehicle ahead cuts in, diver should control vehicle at all times to ensure safety.
- Traffic jam assist system and integrated cruise assist system are driving assistance systems, which can not violate laws of physics and has certain limitations. Driver must always keep control of the vehicle and be fully responsible for the vehicle.

5-9. Drive Away Information System

Drive Away Information System (DAI)

Introduction

Drive away information system allows user to relax and focus on other things other than driving when the vehicle is in line at traffic light-controlled intersections or congested roads, and assists the driver to resume driving in time when the traffic environment changes.

■ If the vehicle is waiting in line at traffic light-controlled intersections or congested roads, when the following conditions are met, the system will sound an alarm and instrument cluster will display that the vehicle ahead is moving, which can remind the driver to resume driving:

- Detect that a vehicle ahead is leaving.
- The vehicle is stationary.

• ACC is not activated.

READ

• Drive away information system can be set in audio system. For details, refer to "Audio System".
• When the vehicle is waiting in line, if another vehicle gets between the vehicle and the vehicle ahead, drive away information system abandons the original vehicle target and selects the new vehicle as the new target.

5-10. Intelligent High Beam Assist System (HMA)

Intelligent high beam assist system can turn on and off high beam light automatically. When driving at night, high beam lights will turn on automatically if there are no ahead vehicles are detected in the opposite or same direction, and related external environment and traffic conditions meet the conditions; If ahead vehicles driving in the opposite or same direction or urban roads are detected, high beam lights will turn off automatically, providing convenience for driver while preventing abuse of high beam lights. Meanwhile, driver can turn on/off high beam lights forcefully by manual operation.

■ Intelligent high beam ON/OFF

• Start the vehicle, and turn the headlight combination switch to "AUTO" position. When the low beam light automatically comes on, pull left combination switch of the steering wheel away from steering wheel side and release, intelligent high beam assist system is activated, " " white indicator on instrument cluster comes on; When the vehicle speed is no lower than 40 km/h, the intelligent high beam assist system automatically turns headlight high beam on/off according to road conditions such as meeting, following, and overtaking.
• When the intelligent high beam assist system is activated, the headlight high beam turns on or flashes, " " white indicator on instrument cluster goes off. Toggle left combination switch of the steering wheel away from steering wheel side and release, intelligent high beam assist system is reactivated.

READ

- Headlight high beam will turn off automatically when wiper operation is too fast.
- In foggy weather, when fog lights are activated, headlight high beam will turn off automatically.
- When 3 or more street lights are detected by camera, high beam lights will turn off automatically.
- When the vehicle speed is lower than 30 km/h, the intelligent high beam assist system turns off the headlight high beam automatically.
- When the ambient brightness is too high, the intelligent high beam assist system turns off the headlight high beam automatically.
- Intelligent high beam assist system can be set in head unit system. For details, refer to "Head Unit System".
- When ESP/ABS is activated or steering is too fast, the intelligent high beam assist system can not turn the headlight high beam on/off automatically.

5-11. Driving Recorder (DVR)

The driving recorder is an instrument that records image, sound and other relevant information during driving. It can record video image and sound of the whole driving process, which can provide evidence for traffic accidents. People who like automatic driving can also use it to record driving process.

Please insert TF card of Class 10 or above version before power on, and the partition format of the card is FAT 32 or exFAT.

READ

- The TF card for vehicles without visual monitor system is installed behind the inside rear view mirror.
- TF of driving recorder can be selected from SanDisk, Kingston, SAMSUNG, TOSHIBA and other related brands.

■ Driving recorder connection and display

OMT22-4310

The driving recorder is connected to head unit through Wi-Fi and is displayed and operated on head unit. Click driving recorder application to enter the real-time screen of it. Click the upper right corner to return to the head unit main screen and exit the driving recorder screen.

READ

- There is a certain delay in Wi-Fi transmission, so the real-time screen displayed on the head unit has a certain delay compared with the actual screen in front of the vehicle seen by the human eyes.
- The Wi-Fi connection between head unit and driving recorder may be disconnected after exiting the driving recorder. When clicking the driving recorder application again, it needs to reconnect Wi-Fi. This process will take a certain time. Please wait for a while.

■ Normal recording

- Start vehicle, the driving recorder starts recording, the red dot in middle of real-time screen on head unit flashes, and REC is displayed. And the time in middle of the screen increases by seconds.
- The video recorded by normal recording is stored in time segments. Default time is 3 minutes, and it can be changed to 1 minute or 5 minutes manually.
- The normal recording is recorded and stored in normal video folder by sections. When the normal video folder is full, the earliest recorded video will be automatically overwritten.

READ

Click " " on the real-time screen of head unit to turn on/off the sound recording which is off by default. Some configuration models have no recording function. Please refer to the actual vehicle configuration.

CAUTION

Do not unplug the TF card directly during video recording. If TF card is needed to unplug, please pause the recording or turn off DVR before unplugging.

■ Emergency recording

- When DVR is in normal operating state, if vehicle is involved in a collision, DVR is not damaged and this function is activated, DVR will automatically record video for 10 s before and after the collision separately.
- The emergency recording is recorded and stored in emergency video folder. When the emergency video folder is full, the earliest recorded video will be automatically overwritten, while the head unit will prompt with text: Driving recorder emergency video folder is full and has been cycle for coverage, please check it in time.

READ

In case of accidental collision, emergency video files are not guaranteed in each collision due to the insufficient collision intensity or other factors. If no emergency video is generated, you can find the video segment when accident occurs in normal video folder.

■ Parking monitoring

- With engine turned off, if vehicle is involved in a collision, DVR is not damaged and this function is activated, DVR will be turned on and record automatically for 20 s and then turn off.
- The parking monitoring is recorded and stored in emergency video folder. When the emergency video folder is full, the earliest recorded video will be automatically overwritten, while the head unit will prompt with text: Driving recorder emergency video folder is full.

READ

- The parking monitoring function is on by default and user can turn off/on the parking monitoring function in head unit.
- When the battery power is lower than a certain voltage value and the parking monitoring function is turned on, the driving recorder cannot be enabled by vibration.
- In case of accidental collision, the collision intensity may be insufficient or Others factors may exist, which does not guarantee that the driving recorder can enable every time to record video.

■ Taking photos and snapshot

- Click " " to take photos, one photo at each time.
- When the steering wheel custom button "☆" is set to snapshot by DVR, the "☆" button can be pressed to snapshot.

■ Photo/video playback

Click album on the real-time screen of the head unit to see the Video, Emergency and Photo in the memory card.

READ

- In video or emergency video, slide up and down, select and click a video to enter the playback screen to play the video. You can pause, continue, switch to the previous/next video, and delete video.
- In the video file list interface, long press a video, a small circle will appear in the top right corner of the video thumbnail, with " √ " indicating that the video is selected, multiple or single choice is allowed, click Delete to delete the selected video. Deleted video is not recoverable.
- During video recording, when the overlay switch of driving information is ON, you can see the date, time and driving status when recording this video in the information bar of video playback screen.

CAUTION

In the process of deleting videos or photos, do not unplug TF card or cut power off to avoid damaging TF card.

■ Setting

You can enter the setting menu screen of the driving recorder by clicking the setting soft button. The setting items of the driving recorder include the following contents:

Driving information overlay: ON (default)/OFF.

Recording resolution: 1080P (default), 720P.

Recording time: 1 minute, 3 minutes (default), 5 minutes.

Vibration sensitivity: High, middle (default), low.

Wide dynamic: ON (default)/OFF.

Parking monitoring: ON (default)/OFF.

Snapshot: Take photo, record short video, take photo + record short video (default).

Recorder memory card: Display TF capacity, and TF memory card can be formatted.

About recorder: Display hardware version number and software version number of the recorder, and the software of driving recorder can be updated.

Restore factory setting: Restore the factory default setting of recorder.

READ

In the process of formatting the memory card and upgrading the software, do not unplug the card or cut power off to avoid damaging the memory card or recorder.

5-12. Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

TPMS is an active safety feature. It can monitor tire inflation pressure and temperature in real time. When tire inflation pressure is too low or temperature is too high, tire pressure monitoring system alarms.

OMT22-4060

Vehicle is powered on, press "" on steering wheel to switch to tire pressure display screen.

When the driving speed of vehicle is higher than 30 km/h and the continuous driving time is more than 45 seconds, the instrument cluster can display the tire pressure and temperature values in real time.

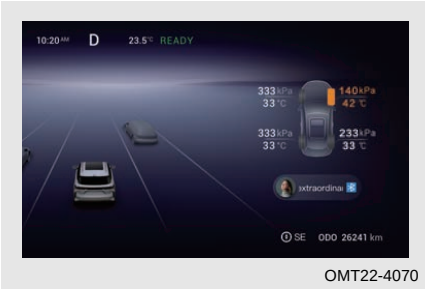
Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction alarm

When the vehicle speed is higher than 30 km/h, if the TPMS does not receive radio-frequency signal from one or more sensors for 10 consecutive minutes, TPMS will send system fault warning, and the instrument cluster will display the words "Tire pressure monitoring system fault", and the "" yellow indicator on instrument cluster will flash 75 seconds and then remain on.

Possible causes of tire pressure monitoring system fault:

- Sensor may be affected due to electromagnetic shielding caused by installing tire chains, affecting tire pressure monitoring system proper operation.
- Configuration learning of tire pressure monitoring system is not performed after replacing wheels (spare tire included).
- Tire pressure monitoring system components have been damaged, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair as necessary.
- The tire pressure monitoring system may not work properly due to interference of electronic equipment (over standard equipment) installed on vehicle, resulting false alarm.
- Tire pressure monitoring system may not operate due to radio interference. Tire pressure monitoring system may be interfered temporarily due to strong electromagnetic radio signals with same frequency (433 MHz).

Low pressure warning



OMT22-4070

When tire inflation pressure is less than 175 kPa, and vehicle continues to drive at a speed higher than 30 km/h, system will send low pressure warning within 5 minutes.

When the vehicle is powered on, if tire inflation pressure displayed on instrument cluster is lower than 175 kPa, the system will give a low pressure alarm.

When low pressure warning occurs, the corresponding wheel icon changes to red, the current pressure value is displayed, and tire pressure warning light remains on.

When low pressure warning occurs, please inflate the tire to 230 kPa as soon as possible. After the vehicle is driven at a speed higher than 30 km/h for a period of time, low pressure warning will be automatically canceled.

⚠ WARNING
When tire inflation pressure is too low, restore the tire inflation pressure to normal value as soon as possible; Low tire inflation pressure will increase fuel consumption and aggravate tire wear. Serious tire wear may cause a risk of tire blowout.

High temperature warning

OMT22-4080

When tire temperature is higher than 85°C, and vehicle continues to drive at a speed higher than 30 km/h, system will send high pressure warning within 5 minutes.

When the vehicle is powered on, if tire temperature displayed on instrument cluster is higher than 85℃, system will send high temperature warning.

When high pressure warning occurs, the corresponding wheel icon changes to red, the current temperature value is displayed, and tire pressure warning light remains on.

When high temperature warning occurs, after tire temperature is lower than 80℃ and the vehicle is driven at a speed higher than 30 km/h for a period of time, high temperature warning will be automatically canceled.

⚠ WARNING

When high pressure warning occurs, stop driving at once to cool down tires naturally. Otherwise, accidents may be caused. When tire temperature is too high, it cannot be cooled by pouring cold water, as this may damage the tire, causing an accident.

Auto positioning function

- Unlearned tire pressure system and new changed tire pressure sensor can use auto positioning function to learn sensor ID automatically.
- If the vehicle has stopped more than 20 minutes after tire rotation cycle is performed or tire pressure sensor is replaced with a new one, when the vehicle speed is higher than 30 km/h for 10 minutes or more, the system can automatically learn the tire pressure and match the tire pressure to the corresponding position.

⚠ CAUTION

If auto learning is failed, please contact the authorized service station for learning or inspection and repair.

5-13. Driver Monitoring System (DMS)

Driver Monitoring System (DMS)

DMS (Driver Monitoring System) uses the infrared camera arranged in the cabin to monitor driving status of driver in real time and collects the face image of driver (such as yawning, eyes closed, nodding, etc.) and line-of-sight area information in real time, judging the driver status in real time. The camera only captures the face of driver, does not capture the rest of the vehicle. The entire face information captured will not be used for personal identification and will not be stored. The system is enabled by default.

■ Main function

1. Determine if driver is fatigued by monitoring facial expression, eye closure, blinking frequency, etc. of driver. When detecting that driver is in a state of fatigue, pop-up window will display on instrument cluster and an alarm sounds;
2. Determine where the driver is looking and if the driver is distracted by tracking driver line-of-sight. When the driver is detected to be distracted, pop-up window will display on instrument cluster and an alarm sounds;
3. The system is enabled by default every time the vehicle is started, and can be turned off manually on head unit screen. After each power-on, the system will perform self-check, when the camera is blocked or system is malfunctioning, the corresponding prompt will display on instrument cluster.

⚠ CAUTION

- DMS can be set in audio system. For details, refer to "Audio System".
- When driver monitor system is activated, " " indicator on the meter comes on; when driver monitor system is abnormal, "" indicator on the meter comes on. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- When the vehicle speed is higher than 10 km/h, driver monitor system will sound an alarm when the system detects that driver is in a fatigued driving state.
- When the vehicle speed is greater than 20 km/h, driver monitor system will sound an alarm when the system detects that driver is distracted or does not respond to the reminder.

⚠ WARNING

Driver fatigue monitoring system is only an auxiliary tool. In any case, the driver should be responsible for the safety of the vehicle. Fatigue and distracted driving are strictly prohibited. He/she must always concentrate on driving carefully.

5-14. Parking Radar System

Parking Radar System

Parking radar system adopts digital sensors to detect distance on base of ultrasonic technology. It can presents driver the distance between front/rear of the vehicle and objects, and give voice prompts and image display to reduce personnel injury and vehicle damage caused by forward and backward driving.

Parking radar system consists of radar sensor (4 sensors or 8 sensors according to different configurations), head unit and alarm device, etc.

Parking radar switch (if equipped)

OMT22-4260

Start the vehicle, press "P" button, parking radar system turns on; when shift lever is not in R, press "P" button again to exit.

READ

If vehicle is moving forward and parking radar system is activated, when the vehicle speed is higher than 15 km/h, the front and rear sensors of radar system will stop working; when the vehicle speed is lower than 15 km/h, the parking radar system will not resume work. The parking radar system can be turned on/off by clicking the parking radar switch at this time.

System information display

- For models with 4 sensors: Start the vehicle, and shift the shift lever to R to activate parking radar system; When a radar sensor detects an obstacle, head unit displays distance from obstacle (red, yellow, green areas) accompanied by alarm sound.
- For models with 8 sensors: Start the vehicle, and click the parking radar switch or shift the shift lever to R to activate parking radar system; When the radar sensor detects an obstacle, head unit displays distance from obstacle (red, yellow, green areas) accompanied by alarm sound.

READ

- If radar sensor is malfunctioning, parking radar system will sound for 2 seconds when it is turned on. When applying parking brake or shifting the shift lever to P, radar sensor malfunction warning sound will be shielded.
- When parking brake is applied, only the radian information is displayed in head unit, and prompt sound does not sound; When the shift lever is shifted to P, the parking radar will not detect in standby mode.

CAUTION

When the distance between reversing radar and obstacle is 20 cm or less, the object may not be detected. Driver should pay attention to the surroundings and drive safely.

WARNING

- Parking radar system only provides assistance for you, and does not operate properly under all driving conditions, weather conditions, traffic conditions or road conditions.
- The driver must control vehicle, monitor and manage parking radar system, and operate as needed in the whole process;

Function limit

Parking radar system may not work normally in the following conditions:

- Radar sensors cannot detect thin objects such as wires, fences and ropes, etc.
- Radar sensors cannot detect low objects such as rocks, etc.
- Radar sensors may not detect objects that are higher than bumper.
- Radar sensors cannot detect objects that easily absorb ultrasonic waves such as soft snow, cotton, sponge, etc.
- When radar sensor surfaces are frozen, they will not detect any obstacle.
- When radar sensors are covered by dirt, snow or mud, they may not detect obstacles.
- If obstacles are detected by more sensors, the distances between sensors and obstacles are displayed simultaneously, and system sends sound alarm according to nearest obstacle.
- When vehicle is on a steep slope.
- When vehicle is equipped with a high frequency radio or antenna is in use.
- When there is large noise near the vehicle, such as vehicle horns, motorcycle engines, air brakes of oversize vehicles, or other loud noises producing ultrasonic waves.
- When driving in snow or rain.

⚠ CAUTION

- For obstacles out of detection range, radar sensors will not alarm.
- When moving, be aware the parking radar sensors on the other side may get close to other obstacles.

Cleaning parking radar sensor

When washing vehicle, use a soft cloth or water (low water pressure) to wash off foreign matters such as snow, mud, and dust on the surface of the parking radar sensor.

OMT22-4270

High pressure water flow such as water guns or excessive external forces may cause damage to the radar sensors. Do not pinch or impact the radar sensor, or it may cause abnormal operation.

If buzzer does not sound when reversing, please check the followings:

- If there is foreign matter on the surface of radar sensor.
- Radar sensors cannot detect wires and fences. Check if radar sensor surface is frozen.
- If the vehicle has been parked for a long time in hot or cold weather.
- If the cause cannot be determined, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

Auto Parking Function

Auto parking function helps driver drive in or out parking space recognized by system. The system can help user search and confirm a target parking space. Also, user can select a parking space on head unit display. After confirming the target parking space, system will park vehicle automatically under user's supervision. The types of park in spaces supported by the system include vertical parking spaces, diagonal parking spaces, and horizontal parking spaces, while the types of park out spaces supported by the system are horizontal parking spaces.

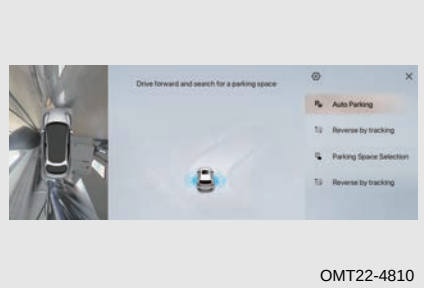
⚠ CAUTION

- The auto parking function does not support mechanical stereo parking space.
- If the auto parking function detects the existence of blind areas, it may not sound an alarm, sound false alarm or have a delayed alarm when there is a risk. Do not rely excessively on alarm information of system.
- The auto parking function cannot determine if the parking space is legal, safe and reliable, such as the disabled parking space and the parking space with front-end orientation requirements, which needs to be determined by you.

⚠ WARNING

- The auto parking function is an assist driving function, which cannot completely replace driving behavior of driver. During parking, driver should always pay close attention to the surrounding environment, control the vehicle to stop in time when encountering dangerous situations, and ensure driving safety to avoid accidents such as accidental injuries.
- If the auto parking function detects the existence of blind areas, it may not sound an alarm, sound false alarm or have a delayed alarm when there is a risk. Do not rely excessively on alarm information of system. When encountering danger, the user needs to control the vehicle to stop in time to avoid an accident.
- During using auto parking function, user needs to always pay attention to the surrounding environment, especially vehicles, bicycles, pedestrians (-especially children), small animals or other thin, sharp, hanging, low obstacles that suddenly approach the vehicle. When judging that there may be a risk of scratch or collision, please gently depress the brake pedal to take over the vehicle in time to avoid safety accidents.
- In some narrow parking lots (such as a corner or parking space at corner), the sensor performance is limited, and there may be a certain risk of collision.

Auto park in



OMT22-4810

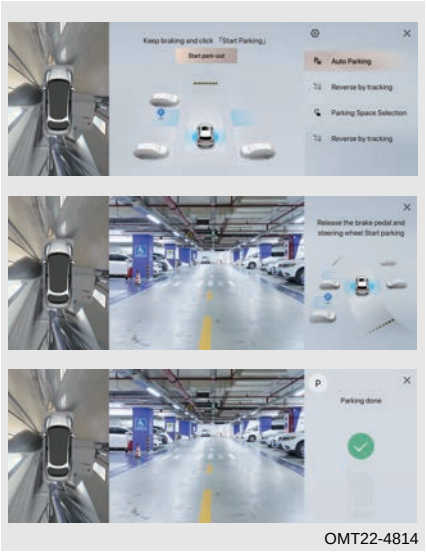
Select "Auto parking". Under the auto parking screen, select "Auto park in" to enter the auto park in screen. The head unit prompts you to move forward and search for a parking space.

OMT22-4812

When the system detects an available parking space, the head unit prompts that the auto parking function is available, please stop the vehicle.

READ

- For safety, before activating parking assist function, user must wear seat belt well, and make sure that doors, hood and back door are closed.
- When the vehicle speed is higher than 30 km/h, parking assist function can not be used; After the user has entered the parking assist function, if the speed exceeds 30 km/h, the system will exit directly.
- The system recommends that the vehicle is parked in the parking space marked with a "P" logo, and the user can also choose the parking space he or she wants to park in independently.
- During searching for parking spaces, the vehicle speed is not higher than 25 km/h, and the lateral distance between the driving path and alternative parking space is maintained between 0.5 and 1.8 m.
- When the user searches for the parking space during driving, it is necessary to ensure that the angle between the vehicle and the parking space line is no more than 15°. If the angle is too large, the parking space cannot be identified.

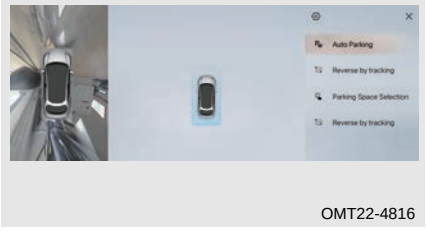


OMT22-4814

When the system discovers available parking spaces, the head unit display will display parking space information, please stop at this time. If multiple available parking spaces appear, users can select the target parking space to park in on the head unit screen.

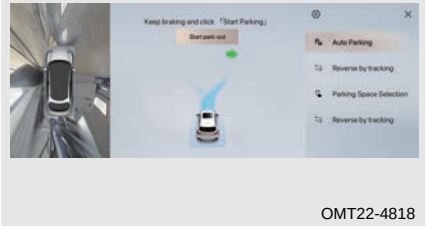
After confirming the target parking space and the system takes over the parking operation, the head unit prompts the user to release the steering wheel with both hands and release the brake pedal, system enters the auto parking process.

Auto park out



OMT22-4816

When user turns on the parking assist function, select "Auto parking". Under the auto parking screen, select "Auto park out" to enter the auto park out screen. Follow the prompts in the head unit to operate.



OMT22-4818

When selecting interior park out, the user chooses to park out from the left or right, after the system takes over the parking operation, the head unit prompts the user to release the steering wheel with both hands and release the brake pedal, system enters the auto park out process.

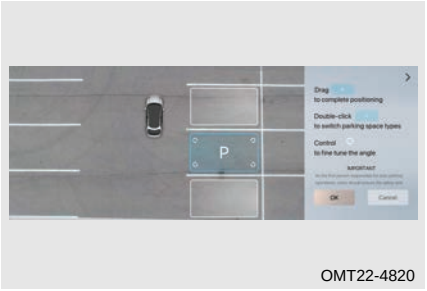
⚠ CAUTION

After the user selects the interior park out, the system will determine if there are obstacles in the front parking path. If the front path is clear, the system will hint the user that the path is clear, please park out by yourself.

⚠ WARNING

Auto park out only supports horizontal park out. To avoid accidents, do not use it in other situations.

Auto selecting parking space



OMT22-4820

User turns on the parking assist function, enters the parking screen and selects "Auto parking". Under the auto parking screen, select "Auto selecting parking space" to enter the auto selecting parking space screen.

After confirming the target parking space and the system takes over the parking operation, the head unit prompts the user to release the steering wheel with both hands and release the brake pedal, system enters the auto parking process.

READ

- When using the auto selecting parking space function, ensure that the vehicle is stationary, otherwise the function will not be used.
- Users can double click "P" to switch the parking direction, drag "P" to select a parking position, control "↻" to fine tune the angle; Users need to ensure the availability of the selected location.

Limitation and exiting

The following situations may cause the auto parking function to not operate or exit:

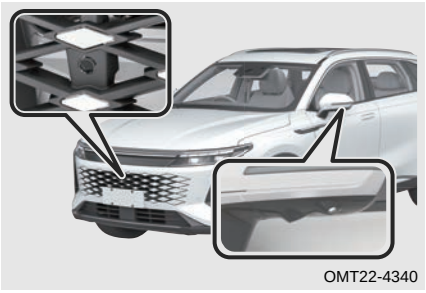
- Before using the auto parking function, user needs to make sure that all panoramic view cameras and ultrasonic radar are clean. If camera and radar are dirty, as well as environmental conditions (such as unclear parking space lines caused by rainy weather and wear, and the presence of stagnant water in the parking space) may affect the performance of auto parking.
- Door, front compartment cover, back door is not closed, seat belt is not fastened, and any rear view mirror is not deployed.
- The vehicle is on a curve, steep slope, road with potholes (such as gullies, sewers, cliff edges, elevated platforms, raised curbs, sidewalks, slippery surfaces).
- There are objects in or around the parking space that are difficult for sensors to detect, especially objects with small cross sections (such as thin branch, suspended object, charging pile, fire extinguisher box).

- The parking assist function fails or a collision occurs.
- The above limitations do not describe all circumstances that may affect the proper functioning of the automatic function. As an assist driving function, auto parking cannot completely substitute for driving behavior of the driver. During parking, driver should always be vigilant, pay close attention to various dangerous situations around, and ensure safe driving, otherwise it may cause an accident, and even lead to serious property losses, personal damage and even death.

5-15. Panoramic View Monitor System

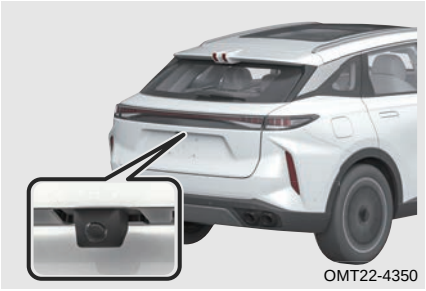
Panoramic view monitor collects images from front, rear, left and right of vehicle and splices them into a birds-eye view of vehicle surroundings through image processing algorithm, and then display it on head unit system, so as to help driver more intuitively confirm the relative relationship between vehicle and parking space as well as surrounding obstacles.

Camera Layout


OMT22-4340

Installation position of front camera: Intake grille of front bumper.

Installation position of left/right camera: Bottom of left/right outside rear view mirror.


OMT22-4350

Installation position of rear camera: Upper middle part of rear license plate.

Usage of Panoramic View Monitor

■ Entering panoramic view monitor

OMT22-4360

Vehicle speed is less than 15 km/h (D): After front parking radar obstacle distance signal is received, it enters panoramic view monitor (if equipped).

Start the vehicle, and vehicle speed is not higher than 30 km/h:

- Shift the shift lever to R to enter panoramic view monitor.
- Press panoramic view monitor switch to enter panoramic view monitor.

- It enters panoramic view monitor during large angle steering (it is necessary to turn on the steering wheel angle in panoramic view monitor system setting in head unit to activate the panoramic view).
- It enters panoramic view monitor when left/right turn signal lights are turned on (it is necessary to turn on the turn signal light in panoramic view monitor system setting in head unit to activate the panoramic view).

READ
When gear position is in D and there is an obstacle ahead, panoramic view monitor function is activated.

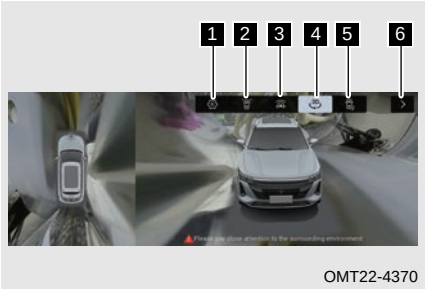
■ Exiting panoramic view monitor

- Exit panoramic view monitor when the vehicle is powered off.
- If vehicle speed is more than 30 km/h, it exits the panoramic view monitor.
- When panoramic view monitor is activated by R position, move shift lever out from R position to exit the panoramic view monitor after delaying 15 seconds.
- If panoramic view monitor function is activated by obstacle, it exits the panoramic view monitor 15 s after the obstacle disappears.
- Start the vehicle, the panoramic view monitor is turned on by left/right turn signal lights, and it will exit after turning off left/right turn signal lights.
- Start the vehicle, if panoramic view monitor is turned on by panoramic view monitor switch, click the switch again to exit the panoramic view monitor.
- Start the vehicle, panoramic view monitor is turned on when the turning angle of steering wheel is more than 190°, panoramic view monitor will exit when the turning angle of steering wheel is less than 180°.

CAUTION

The panoramic view monitor system provides driving assistance convenience, but the object in the image does not reflect the actual size and obstacle distance. Compared to the actual image, the image has a little delay and blind spot. Therefore, the panoramic view function is not a substitute for driver's operation and judgment. Driver should pay attention to the surroundings and drive safely during turning on/off and using the function.

Switching Panoramic View Monitor System View



OMT22-4370

1 Setting button

Click to pop up the setting item menu.

2 Wheel side view button

Wheel side view + splicing view and wheel side view can be switched.

3 Wide angle view button

Perform distortion correction on views and splice them into a wide angle view.

4 3D view button

Click the specific view angle button around the top view of vehicle to switch the corresponding 3D view. 3D view can be switched to any view angle by sliding.

5 2D view button

It displays the view of front/rear/left/ right + splicing view.

6 Back button

When gear position is not in R, it is possible to exit panoramic view monitor system using back button.

READ

The panoramic view monitor system is very helpful for parking and safety driving. It is recommended that you should be familiar with this function in an open and convenient area.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not scratch the lens when cleaning dirt or snow on the camera surface.
- Before using panoramic view monitor system, make sure to extend outside rear view mirrors and close the back door firmly.
- The object distance seen from the panoramic view monitor system is different from the actual distance.
- The camera is installed on the front grille, outside rear view mirror and above the rear license plate. Do not place anything on the camera.
- It is not recommended to use the panoramic view monitor system when outside rear view mirror is in folded position. Make sure that back door is firmly closed when using the panoramic view monitor system to operate the vehicle.
- The panoramic view monitor system has been calibrated professionally before leaving the factory. Any removal/installation and changes on camera installation position and angle without permission may affect the function and effect of panoramic view monitor system.
- The panoramic view monitor system provides driving assistance convenience, but the object in the image does not reflect the actual size and obstacle distance. Compared to the actual image, the image has a little delay and blind spot. Therefore, the panoramic view function is not a substitute for driver's operation and judgment. Driver should pay attention to the surroundings and drive safely during turning on/off and using the function.

Setting Panoramic View Monitor System

OMT22-4380

- [Panoramic view starting screen] Click to start starting screen: When user enters the panoramic view monitor system for the first time by panoramic view monitor button, panoramic view starting screen will be displayed.
- [Activate panoramic view monitor by turn signal light] Click turn signal light to activate panoramic view monitor: When left/right turn signal light switch is turned on, 3D view of rear left side or rear right side of vehicle will be displayed.
- [Activate panoramic view monitor by steering wheel angle] Click steering wheel angle to activate panoramic view monitor: When steering wheel angle is more than 190°, 3D view of rear left side or rear right side of vehicle will be displayed.
- [Auto zoom in view] Click to turn on auto zoom in view: Enter zoom in view automatically based on obstacle distance.
- [Door open prompt] Click to turn on door open view: Remind the status of engine compartment, moon roof, four doors and luggage compartment switch.
- [Lane guideline display] Click to turn on lane guideline display: Load lane guideline when entering panoramic view monitor.
- [License plate number display] Click to set and display the corresponding license plate number information on vehicle model.
- [Parking radar display] Click to turn on parking radar display.
- [Transparent body] Click to set the transparency of vehicle model.
- [Restore default setting] Click to restore default settings.

5-16. Braking Force Control System

Integrated Braking Force Control System

Integrated braking force control system is an advanced decoupling electro-hydraulic brake system, which can provide the vehicle with power as "it needs" according to the driver's braking requirement; It integrates the functions of vacuum booster, electronic vacuum pump, ESP, ABS etc. to enhance vehicle stability and comfort.

OMT22-4005

Integrated braking force control system is equipped with two kinds of braking feeling (comfort/sport), which is used to adjust brake pedal feeling. The relationship curve between brake pedal depth and vehicle deceleration is different in different modes, and the driver can select preferred style of braking pedal feeling.

■ Brake pitch control

OMT22-4046

When vehicle decelerates and stops in non emergency situations, brake pitch control reduces the suspension pitch and impact at the moment of stopping, so as to provide the driver with the feeling of smooth stopping.

Set brake pitch control sensitivity high/low in the head unit.

Electronic Stability Program System (ESP)

Electronic stability program system is an active safety control system. The system sensor monitors the driving status of vehicle. When the vehicle is prone to unstable conditions such as emergency avoidance of obstacles, turning, etc., and in case of oversteering or understeering, the power system intervention and braking system intervention are used to help the vehicle overcome the tendency to deviate from the ideal track and provide better safety for the vehicle driving. If braking one wheel alone is not enough to stabilize the vehicle, the electronic stability program system will brake other wheels to meet the demand by reducing the engine torque output.

Electronic stability program system of the vehicle integrates the ABS and EBD to ensure the lateral stability of the vehicle.

■ ESP OFF switch

OMT22-4010

When the ESP OFF switch is pressed, the electronic body stability control system is turned off; When the ESP OFF switch is pressed again, the electronic body stability control system is turned on.

■ Electronic stability program system indicator

- When electronic stability program system is turned off, "OFF" yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.
- When electronic stability program system operates, "" yellow indicator on instrument cluster blinks.
- When there is fault in electronic stability program system, " " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

■ Electronic stability program system needs to be turned off in the following conditions

When driving on roads with deep snow or loose gravel; When driving with tire chains; When starting vehicle on power tester.

READ

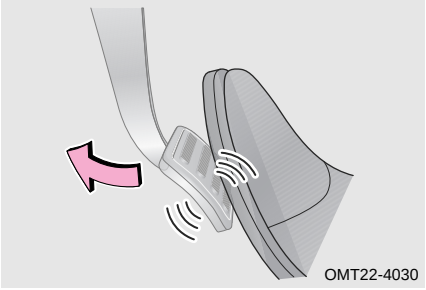
- When driving vehicle for the first time, electronic stability program system is on by default.
- Electronic stability program system cannot be turned off during operation.
- To improve vehicle traction when driving on sand or gravel, it is recommended to turn electronic stability program system off.
- When electronic stability program system is malfunctioning, please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

⚠ WARNING

- Even when electronic stability program system is working, high speed driving, sharp turns or poor road conditions can cause accidents.
- Electronic stability program system does not completely ensure that you can take over vehicle if it has lost control due to various extreme situations. Even vehicle is equipped with electronic stability program system function, always follow laws and regulations to avoid accidents.
- The function of driver assistance relies on ESP for safety. If ESP is turned off, many functions of driver assistance will not be available, temporary malfunction light may appear on the instrument cluster to indicate that the function is not available (not driver assistance system failure). In order to continue to use the driver assistance function, turn on ESP function again, the driver assistance function will recover.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

Anti-lock brake system is an active safety system, which is designed to prevent wheel from being locked, and maintain steering performance even in emergency braking, making you avoid obstacles. However, when the physical limit is exceeded or the vehicle is driven at high speed on a slippery road, this function cannot completely prevent the vehicle from slipping.



- Anti-lock brake system does not work during normal braking, and only works when the wheels are about to lock during emergency braking to avoid wheel locking.
- If brake pedal pulsates with noise during braking, it indicates that anti-lock brake system is working. This is normal. Never release brake pedal in this case.

■ Anti-lock brake system indicator

When there is fault in anti-lock brake system, " (ABS) " yellow indicator on instrument cluster remains on.

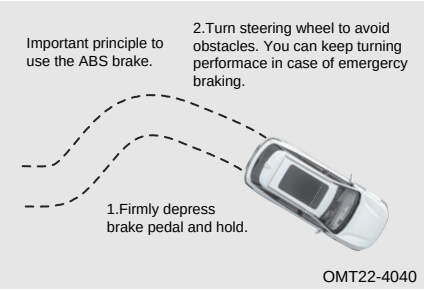
⚠ CAUTION

When the anti-lock brake system fails, the driver can carry out regular braking, but should drive at a lower speed to avoid emergency braking and prevent wheel locking. Please drive carefully and go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible to prevent accidents.

⚠ WARNING

When anti-lock brake system malfunction indicator and brake system malfunction indicator remain on at the same time, please park the vehicle in a safe area immediately and turn on hazard light. Please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

■ Anti-lock brake system braking



Anti-lock brake system works immediately in sudden braking to maintain vehicle braking and steering performance. If there is enough space, you can avoid obstacles successfully.

⚠ WARNING

- Always drive carefully and make sure to decelerate during turning.
- Although anti-lock brake system can ensure the best braking effect, braking distance will vary largely due to road conditions.
- Also, anti-lock brake system cannot eliminate risks arising from close-following driving, driving through water, turning quickly or driving on poor road surfaces and cannot avoid accidents caused by inattentive or inappropriate driving.
- Anti-lock brake system cannot guarantee a shorter braking distance under all road conditions, such as equipped with tire chains, on sand or snow covered roads. Compared to vehicles without anti-lock brake system, your vehicle may require a longer braking distance.

Precautions for Operation

■ Anti-lock brake system will make operation sound in following conditions:

- Rebounding sound of brake pedal.
- Impacting sound between suspension and vehicle body due to emergency braking.
- Operation sound of motor, solenoid valve and return pump in hydraulic unit.
- Operation sound of solenoid valve when electronic brake force distribution system is intervened in braking.
- Buzz will be heard for a short time after vehicle is powered on or engine is started, indicating system self-test is performed.

■ Always maintain a safe distance from vehicle ahead in the following situations:

- When driving on rough roads.
- When driving on roads with potholes or uneven surfaces.
- When driving with tire chains.
- When driving on dirt, gravel or snow-covered roads.

⚠ CAUTION
Tire size, specification and tread pattern wear will seriously affect ABS system performance. Replaced tires should have same size, load capacity and structure as original one. When tire is abnormal, it is recommended to replace with an original type at authorized service station.

⚠ WARNING
• Although ABS system can help to control vehicle, make sure to drive carefully, maintain a moderate speed and keep safe distance from preceding vehicles. There are certain limitations in vehicle stability and steering wheel operation effect even ABS system operates. • When driving on rainy days, properly control the vehicle speed, because if the wheel spins or slips, ABS system will lose control of vehicle.

■ Electric Brakeforce Distribution (EBD) system

EBD system automatically adjusts braking force distribution ratio of front and rear axles according to axial load transfer difference caused by braking to improve braking efficiency. In addition, EBD system works together with ABS system to improve braking stability. Also, when braking in curve, brake force of inside and outside wheel can be adjusted to improve braking stability.

■ Traction Control System (TCS)

Traction control system is an extended function of ESP system. During starting off or rapidly accelerating, drive wheels may slip. In case of on a slippery road such as snowy or icy road, direction could get out of control and cause dangerous. When TCS detects that driven wheel speed is lower than drive wheel speed (a feature of slip) using sensors, it sends a signal to adjust ignition timing, reduce throttle opening, downshift or brake wheels so that wheel will no longer slip.

■ Hill Aassist Control (HAC) system

HHC system can prevent vehicle from moving backward when starting off on uphill. After vehicle is stationary, HHC system adopts longitudinal acceleration sensor to determine if the vehicle is on a slope. When vehicle starts from stationary state on a slope to drive or reverse upwards, HHC system automatically operates. When starting off, after driver releases brake pedal, system maintains previous braking pressure for 1-2 seconds to hold the

vehicle. As increasing of drive torque, brake pressure reduces gradually, avoiding accidents caused by moving backward when starting off on a slope.

■ Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA) system

HBA system is an extended function of ESP system, which is used to shorten the braking distance in emergency braking. In an emergency, driver usually brakes in time, but generally does not apply the maximum braking force, thus lengthening braking distance. In this case, HBA system will operate: When driver depresses brake pedal rapidly in an emergency with insufficient force, HBA system quickly increases brake pressure to maximum level, making anti-lock brake system shorten braking distance more quickly and effectively.

■ Roll Stability Control (RSC) System

RSC is used to reduce the risk of the vehicle rolling over on the road during dynamic (e.g. lane change) and static (e.g. loop driving) maneuvers.

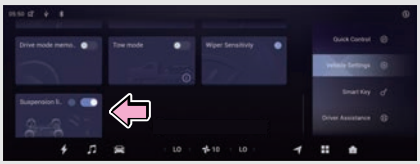
■ Brake Override System (BOS)

When the accelerator and brake pedals are depressed at the same time, the engine output may be restrained.

5-17. Intelligent Electronic Control Suspension

The traditional suspension must have a choice between comfort and handling. The pursuit of comfort leads to poor handling, and the pursuit of handling leads to poor comfort; The intelligent electronic control suspension can automatically adjust the damping force according to the working conditions of the vehicle, which can more easily meet the requirements of vehicle for handling and smoothness at the same time.

■ Suspension mode



OMT22-4045

The intelligent electronic control suspension is equipped with three suspension modes (sport/standard/comfort), which can realize rapid response according to different road surfaces, and automatically adjust the softness and stiffness of the suspension to balance the comfort and sportiness.

5-18. Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicle System (PHEV)

PHEV can be driven by fuel energy and electricity energy, which combines the advantages of electric vehicle and fuel vehicle, there is no need to worry about driving mileage of electric vehicle and high fuel consumption of fuel vehicle. It satisfies economy, energy-saving and environmental friendly.

Power Battery

Basic function of power battery

The main method of charging power battery is to plug in the external power gun for charging, and power battery can also be charged by motor when braking, sliding or starting engine.

The vehicle has intelligent recharging function. When the function is triggered, 12 V battery will be charged by power battery. Therefore, when the vehicle is started again after being placed for a period of time, SOC or pure electric driving mileage displayed on instrument cluster will decrease, which is a normal phenomenon.

■ Since the performance of power battery will decline in low temperature environment, the following treatment methods will help you to use the vehicle better:

1. If ambient temperature is lower than -10℃, it is recommended to park vehicle in a warm house or a garage with room temperature.
2. If there is no warm house or garage with room temperature, the vehicle has charging and heating functions of plug-in charging gun. If charging gun is connected, it is recommended to select travel reservation function half an hour before departure, which can increase power battery temperature to the best state and turn on air conditioning in advance, so that you can have a better driving experience.

■ The following methods will help power battery to be in the best state:

1. It is recommended to charge the power battery fully with a charging device at least once every month.
2. When SOC is less than 20% during driving, avoid sudden acceleration and high-speed driving, and charge it as soon as possible.
3. When the vehicle is not used for a long time, park it in a place where the ambient temperature is lower than 45 ℃ and there is no ponding, and try to avoid direct sunlight.
4. When the vehicle is not used for a long time, SOC displayed on instrument cluster may be inaccurate. Do not judge the remaining power of power battery based on SOC, and charge battery fully before driving.
5. When the vehicle is not used for a long time, the power battery should be charged and maintain the SOC at 50%-70%. Failure to do so may cause excessive discharge of the power battery and decrease the power battery performance, and vehicle malfunction and damage caused by this will not be guaranteed.
6. For a new vehicle, when the power battery is in normal condition, vehicle driving mileage may fluctuate due to driving habits (such as frequent acceleration and deceleration), road conditions (such as driving on a large and long slope), temperature (such as low temperature) and whether

electric equipment (such as air conditioning) is turned on, which is a normal phenomenon.

7. Power battery is a special chemical product, which needs to be used and maintained properly, so proper daily use and maintenance is very important for performance maintenance. At the same time, power battery will decline naturally due to chemical characteristics. Therefore, for vehicles that have been used for a period of time, when trip mileage decreases after battery is fully charged, it is recommended to go to authorized service station for inspection. If authorized service station checks that the total capacity of power battery is in normal range, the decrease of trip mileage may be caused by external reasons such as driving habits, temperature etc.

Power battery recovery

■ Recover and disposal range

Power battery whose residual capacity and charge and discharge performance after using cannot guarantee the vehicle normal driving, or is not used again after it is removed due to other reasons.

■ Recover and disposal process

The power battery is installed on the vehicle chassis, which consists of lithium battery cells. Disposal at will can cause pollution and harm to the environment.

According to relevant regulations, vehicle owner is obliged to hand over used power battery to recycling service stations. It is strictly forbidden to hand over used power battery to other units or individuals. The vehicle owner shall be responsible for environmental pollution or safety accidents caused by unauthorized removal or disassembly of the power battery.

Be sure to dispose according to the following information or requirements. For details on the recycling and disposal of power battery, please go to authorized service station.

1. The temporary recycling service station for used power battery is the local authorized service station.
2. The disassembly of power battery must be performed by professional serviceman with certification qualification of power battery supplier.
3. The power battery belongs to the 9th category of dangerous goods and must be transported by vehicles with the 9th category of dangerous goods transportation qualification.
4. The removed power battery should be stored in a normal temperature, dry environment, away from flammable materials, heat sources, water sources and other hazards.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not dispose of power battery by yourself.
- Do not sell, transfer or modify power battery.
- When power battery needs to be repaired, removed, replaced and disposed, always go to authorized service station.

Usage precautions for power battery

Power battery belongs to high voltage energy-storage device and dangerous goods. It is necessary to go to authorized service station to have professional serviceman install and maintain power battery and observe related safety regulations strictly; Non-professional serviceman and improper operation and use may cause serious results such as electric shock, combustion, explosion etc. Non-professional serviceman are prohibited to install, repair power battery and abuse it beyond specified range. Power battery damage and other losses caused by using it without observing requirements or beyond specified range will not be guaranteed. Pay attention to the following:

1. Anti-shock and anti-collision

   The battery cells of power battery are connected in series and equipped with management system and various sensor devices, so be careful when driving on uneven roads to prevent power battery from bumping.

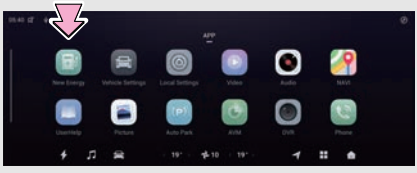
2. Heat insulation in any environment

   Keeping power battery in the best operating temperature range can greatly prolong the service life of battery and improve safety performance, so try to park vehicle in heat insulation and ventilated places.

3. Moisture-proof and water-proof

   Power battery is a high voltage energy-storage device with many high voltage control circuits and battery cells. The liquid entering power battery may cause short circuit, electricity leakage and corrosion of battery cells, electric circuits and connectors. Make sure that power battery will not be soaked by various liquids and moist air will not enter the power battery.

New Energy Settings



OMT22-1030

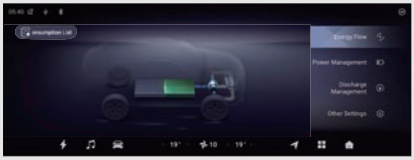
Click new energy on APP screen to enter new energy setting screen.

New energy setting screen includes energy flow, power management, charging/discharging management and other settings.

Energy flow

Energy flow screen displays current energy flow condition.

■ Pure electric drive



OMT22-1040

Only motor drives the vehicle, the engine is not working.

■ Extended range mode (charging)

OMT22-1050

Engine charges power battery, motor drives the vehicle and power battery is charging.

■ Extended range mode (discharging)

OMT22-1060

Engine charges power battery, motor drives the vehicle and power battery is discharging.

■ Parallel drive

OMT22-1070

Engine and motor drive vehicle at the same time.

■ Engine direct drive

OMT22-1080

Engine drives vehicle directly.

■ Charging when driving

OMT22-1090

Engine charges power battery when engine drives the vehicle.

■ Braking feedback

OMT22-1100

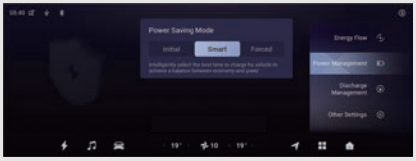
Motor recovers braking energy and charges power battery.

■ Charging when parking

OMT22-1110

Engine charges power battery when parking.

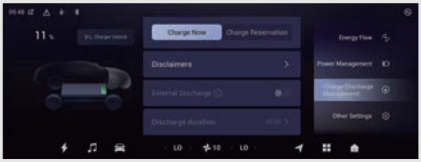
Power management



OMT22-1120

Power management screen can be selected to initial mode, smart mode, and forced mode according to your needs. It is recommended to select smart mode, which can achieve a better balance of driving power and economy.

Charging/discharging management



OMT22-1130

Select charge now, charge reservation, external discharge on charging/discharge management screen according to your needs; Check the disclaimer.

Charge now: Plug in charging gun to charge immediately.

Charge reservation: Plug in charging gun before leaving the vehicle, set the start time and charging time, then charging can be started when appointed time is reached.

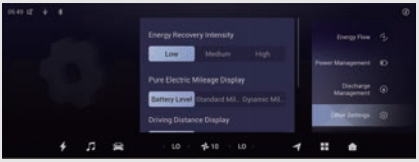
External discharge: Connect the discharging gun, set the discharging time to discharge.

Slow charger unlock: Click to unlock the AC charging gun and stop charging.

READ

Charge reservation is only suitable for AC charging and private charging piles, and needs to be realized with the charging gun connected. The charging piles that use card swiping or code scanning are not available.

Other settings



OMT22-1140

Pedestrian protective sound, appointment trip, energy recovery intensity, pure electric mileage display, driving distance display, ECO mode can be set on other settings according to your needs.

Pedestrian Protective sound: When vehicle moves forward or reverses, pedestrian prompt device will sound an alarm to remind pedestrians and other vehicles.

Appointment trip: If the charging gun is connected or the power battery level is high (if the charging gun is not connected), the vehicle will heat the power battery in advance and turn on the A/C.

Energy recovery intensity: Set low/medium/high.

Pure electric mileage display: Set battery level/standard mileage/dynamic mileage.

Driving distance display: Set total distance/HEV distance/EV distance.

ECO mode: After turning on, ambient light will be automatically turned off, and the screen brightness and volume will be reduced to reduce power consumption.

READ

Appointment trip is only suitable for AC charging and private charging piles, and it is recommended to be realized with the charging gun connected. The charging piles that use card swiping or code scanning are not available.

WARNING

The pedestrian protection sound can only be turned off when there is no other road user within a short distance and the surrounding environment clearly does not require a prompt sound. As long as pedestrian is likely to appear around the vehicle, pedestrian protection sound needs to be turned on.

Energy Recovery Intensity

When vehicle is coasting, the system will convert the mechanical energy into electrical energy to recover energy and charge the power battery, thus reducing energy consumption.

OMT22-1150

Set energy recovery intensity on head unit system: Low/medium/high.

The following information will help you understand energy recovery grade and you can select according to your needs.

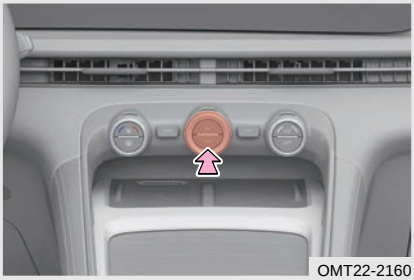
Energy Recovery	Function
Low energy recovery grade	The vehicle coasts for a long distance and driving comfort is better.
Medium energy recovery grade	It is suitable for most driving habits because it combines driving comfort and energy recovery efficiency.
High energy recovery grade	Vehicle deceleration is highest and it can recover more energy.

READ

Energy recovery intensity is set as low or medium for a better balance of driving comfort and economy. Energy recovery intensity is set as high, which may cause a dragging feeling, so it is recommended for high speed driving.

Operating Mode

Power mode



OMT22-2160

After starting the vehicle, press EV/HEV button to switch the power mode; The corresponding EV/HEV indicator on instrument cluster comes on to prompt you that power mode is switched successfully.

OMT22-1170

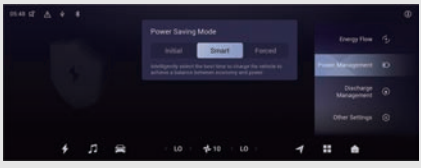
After starting the vehicle, select EV/HEV/EV+ button on head unit system to switch the power mode; The corresponding EV/HEV/EV + indicator on instrument cluster comes on to prompt you that power mode is switched successfully.

Power Mode	Description	
EV mode	EV	The vehicle is driven by pure electricity and the engine does not start.
	EV+	Increase the depth of discharge to provide a longer pure electric driving mileage than EV mode.
HEV mode	HEV	The vehicle is driven by hybrid power, and the engine can start or stop at any time to participate in driving or power generation according to requirements of working conditions.

READ

- When the power battery level is higher, the vehicle will automatically switch to electric mode (EV mode) when it is powered on. It is recommended that you prioritize the use of electric mode (EV mode).
- With vehicle in READY state, P gear and HEV mode, when the power battery level is below a certain value, depressing the accelerator pedal can trigger the forced parking power generation function.
- When vehicle runs continuously in electric mode, pure electric driving mileage decreases with the decrease of battery level. When power battery level is too low, it will switch to HEV mode automatically.
- In some conditions (such as low battery level), it may be impossible to switch from HEV mode to electric mode, and "Current Conditions Not Met, Mode Cannot Be Switched" will be displayed on instrument cluster.
- If vehicle is used in electric mode for a long period of time, the lubrication condition of engine may deteriorate due to infrequent use, therefore, the engine will be automatically started for self-maintenance at regular intervals. Once the maintenance is completed, the engine will automatically shut down.

Power management



OMT22-1190

Battery protection mode can be selected in power management screen according to your needs.

It is recommended to select the smart battery protection mode, which can achieve a better balance of economy and power.

Battery Protection Mode	Function	Common Usage Scenarios
Initial mode	The maximum battery power can be discharged to achieve the maximum pure electric driving mileage.	Suitable for daily driving and have charging conditions.
Smart battery protection mode	Prioritize the fuel economy, intelligently select the best charging time while driving, and reserve energy for pure electric or high-power driving.	Suitable for daily driving.
Forced battery protection mode	Prioritize the battery level holding to get as close as possible to the target battery level, so as to reserve energy for pure electric or high-power driving. Fuel economy will deteriorate in this mode.	Suitable for travel routes that are expected to have mountain roads or congested road conditions.

READ

- In non-forced battery protection mode, when vehicle is powered off and then powered on again, it will enter the battery level mode memorized before powering off.
- In forced battery protection mode, different target battery levels can be set based on specific needs, at the same time, you can select whether to memorize the forced battery protection settings. If "Memorized" is selected, it is still the forced battery protection next time the power is turned on; If "Not memorized" is selected, it will switch to smart battery protection mode next time the power is turned on.

Operating mode linkage

Power Mode		Driving Mode	Battery Protection Mode		
			Initial mode	Smart battery protection mode	Forced battery protection mode
EV mode	EV	Normal mode	√	√	√
		Eco mode	√	√	√
	EV+	Eco mode	√	√	√
HEV mode	HEV	Normal mode	√	√	√
		Eco mode	√	√	√
		Sport mode	√	√	√

Electric mode supports all battery protection modes, electric mode (EV mode) does not support the sport mode, and electric mode (EV+ mode) does not support the normal mode; If sport mode is selected in electric mode, the power mode will automatically switch to HEV mode even if there is no operation in the power mode.

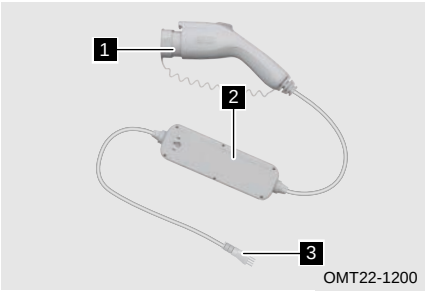
HEV mode supports all driving modes and battery protection mode, and switches to electric mode by switching operation; If the switching conditions are not met, it will remain in the HEV mode, and "Current conditions not met, mode cannot be switched" will be displayed on instrument cluster.

READ

Pure electric driving mileage may be affected by the following factors:

- Driving habits: Frequent acceleration and deceleration or intense driving will result in shorter mileage compared to constant speed driving.
- Usage of equipment such as air conditioning: Turning on the air conditioning for cooling or heating will result in shorter mileage compared to turning off.
- Road conditions: Bumpy roads or long uphill roads will result in shorter mileage compared to flat and dry road conditions.
- Temperature: Available power or driving mileage will decrease as the temperature decreases, and low temperature environments will result in shorter mileage compared to room temperature environments.
- During actual usage, driving mileage will also show different variations due to weather, roads, congestion and other factors.

Charging Device



1 Charging gun
2 Control box
3 Charging plug

READ

- When inserting charging gun to charge, the charging gun will be locked automatically.
- After charging is completed, if vehicle is in the disarming state, charging gun will unlock automatically; if vehicle is in the arming state, charging gun will remain be locked, and can only be unlocked after vehicle is in the disarming state.

READ

Dear users, in order for you to reasonably use the on-board AC slow charging gun for safe charging, the following tips are hereby given. Please read them carefully and use them as required.

- Please use the national standard single-phase power supply socket with the specification of AC250V16A, and use copper core conductor with a wire diameter no less than 2.5 mm ² as the socket wiring, and it must be well grounded;
- The front end of power supply socket must be equipped with a leakage protection air switch. The specifications of the leakage protection air switch are a single-phase rated current of 20 A and a leakage protection threshold of 30 mA;
- It is strictly forbidden to use non-standard power supply equipment such as old socket, universal socket, adapter, adapter cable, modified socket, and grounding Device;
- If the surface of AC slow charging gun or power supply socket is damaged, rusted, blackened, melted, deformed or other abnormalities, please do not charge;
- It is strictly forbidden to soak the entire power supply plug or AC slow charging gun in water. It is strictly forbidden to charge outdoors in rainy and snowy weather or flammable, explosive and other dangerous environments. Do not clean the vehicle while charging;

READ

- When inserting and unplugging the charging plug, please hold the plug or handle, do not pull the wire, and ensure that the plug and jack are inserted in place;
- It is strictly forbidden to unplug the vehicle plug or power supply plug during charging. If there is an emergency, please manually disconnect the leakage protection air switch to cut off the power;
- If charging is stopped when charging does not automatically end, after the power supply socket is manually disconnected or leakage protection air switch on socket cuts off the power supply automatically, manually remove the charging gun.
- When collecting the AC slow charging gun, it is strictly forbidden to throw it away, which will cause product damage. The dust cover must be installed in place after use;
- During charging, if the temperature of the power supply port rises abnormally, please check if the power supply socket is aging and replace the power supply socket in time.

⚠ CAUTION

- Due to safety electricity regulations, it is not recommended to use this device for charging on rainy days.
- It can be only used when the power supply is equipped with circuit breaker (RCD).
- In crowded places, users should place cables horizontally as far as possible during charging.
- If the cables are too long, do not pull the cables by force.
- Lay cables on a flat road without sharp gravel or glass debris.
- Be careful not to use it in places with corrosive liquids, flammable dust, strong corrosive.
- In common aisle or outdoor across road sections, it is necessary to build bridges or use underground crossings, especially to prevent heavy vehicles from repeatedly crushing.

⚠ CAUTION

- The cable itself is heavy, please avoid vertical suspension, it is easy to be affected by wind, long-term shaking and vibration will reduce the cable life.
- Never use free cables longer than 7.5 m to charge.
- When ambient temperature is lower than 0℃, charging time is longer than usual.
- Please insert and unplug the charging gun vertically as carefully as possible to prevent damage to the vehicle or charging device.
- Household AC charging uses on-board charging device to charge, it is recommended to use 220V 50Hz 8A special AC circuit with grounded socket. Special circuit can prevent short circuit or line trip protection due to high power when charging power battery. If special circuit is not used, the normal operation of other devices on the line may be effected.

■ Description of indicators state on control box

Operating/ Malfunctioning Condition	Power Indicator (Red)	Charging Indicator (Green)	Malfunction Indicator (Yellow)
Initial state	Remain on	Flash once	Flash once
Waiting for charging mode	Remain on	Turn off	Turn off
Normal charging mode	Remain on	Flash ①	Turn off
Charging completed	Remain on	Remain on	Turn off
Grounded malfunction	Flash	/②	Flash
Leakage malfunction	Remain on	Remain on	Flash
Overcurrent malfunction	Remain on	Remain on	Remain on
Over-temperature malfunction	Remain on	Turn off	Flash
Overvoltage/ undervoltage	Flash	Turn off	Remain on

① Indicator flashes every 2 seconds, that is, it comes on for 1 second and goes off for 1 seconds;

② "/" indicates that the indicator remains the state before malfunction occurs.

⚠ CAUTION
Do not attempt to remove or repair charging control box. If above malfunctions occur, please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair.

■ Troubleshooting common malfunctions

1. Unable to charge:

- Observe status of indicator and analyze it according to malfunction status;
- Check if it is grounded well;
- Check if voltage of power supply is normal;
- Check if connection of vehicle is normal.

2. Intermittent charging:

- Observe status of indicator and analyze it according to malfunction status;
- Check if 220 V AC is stable;
- Check if temperature is too high.

3. Power-on trip during charging:

- Check if it is grounded well;
- Check if there is short in device;
- Check if total power of all electric equipment is too high.

4. Malfunction occurs each time power on when charging:

- Unplug three-pin plug and charging gun, then insert and unplug them again. If malfunction still occurs, please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

Charging Operation

Inspection before charging

■ If any of the following conditions occur, charging is prohibited, otherwise it may cause short circuit or electric shock, resulting in personal injury.

1. When the connection of discharging device is loose, do not perform charging.
2. Make sure that there is no water or foreign matter in the charging port, and the metal terminals are not rusted or corroded.
3. Make sure that the charging device is free from shell breakage, cable wear, rusty plug and other abnormal conditions.

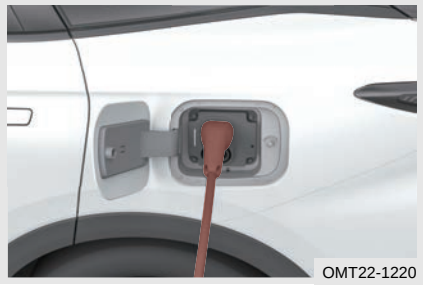
AC charging (slow charging)

⚠ WARNING
When using household power for charging, the current specifications of the selected socket and adapter cable should not be lower than the rated current on the nameplate of on-board charging device. Ensure that the three-pin socket of the household power supply is reliably grounded, otherwise resulting in electric shock.

⚠ CAUTION
AC charging gun must be equipped with leakage protection and temperature monitoring devices, with a current limit of 230 V/10 A/50 Hz.

OMT22-1240

1. Park vehicle in charging area, shifting the gear to P and apply the parking brake;
2. Select charge now in new energy setting screen of head unit, vehicle is powered off;
3. Push center rear of the charging port cover to open it;

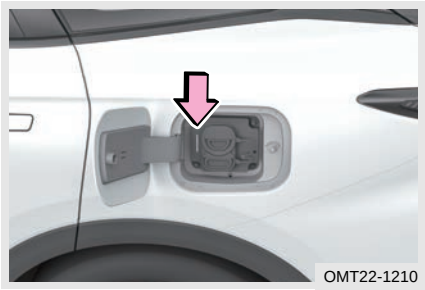

OMT22-1220

4. Take out the on-board charging device, insert the charging plug into power socket;
5. Open protection covers of charging port and charging gun, and insert charging gun into AC charging port until a slight sound is heard (or remove the charging gun from AC charging pile, connect the charging gun to the AC charging port and lock it firmly);
6. After charging is completed, press and hold the upper button on charging gun to unplug the charging gun from AC charging port;
7. Close protection covers of AC charging port and charging gun, and then close charging port cover.
8. Stow on-board charging device (or return the charging gun on the charging pile to its original position).

When charging is completed, or stop charging manually during charging, release the AC charging gun lock by the following operations:

- Unlock the vehicle;
- On head unit, press unlock button on slowing charging gun.

■ Charging/discharging indicator



The charging/discharging indicator is located in charging port cover. Indicate the charging/discharging status in yellow, green, blue, and red respectively.

Remains on in yellow: Waiting for charge.

Flashes in green: It is being charged.

Remains on in green: Charging is completed.

Remains on in red: Charging/discharging fault.

Flashes in blue: Discharging.

Remains on in blue: Waiting for discharge.

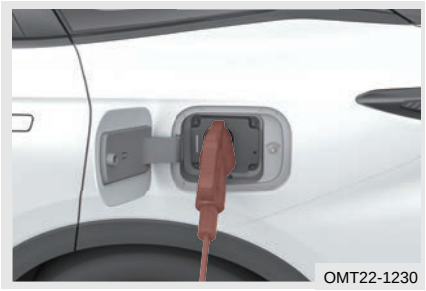
READ

- After charging with on-board charging device is completed, unplug the charging gun end first, and then unplug the connector at power supply end.
- During charge reservation, select charge reservation in head unit, the connected charging device starts charging when it arrives at the appointment time.
- Charge reservation is only suitable for AC charging and private charging piles, and needs to be realized with the charging gun connected. The charging piles that use card swiping or code scanning are not available.
- With vehicle is powered off, if hood is not fully closed after being opened, charge now, charge reservation, and appointment trip functions will not operate properly.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not store or use charging device where the temperature is higher than 50℃, otherwise charging device may be damaged.
- When external power grid is powered off and then powered on again, charging device will start charging automatically again without reconnecting charging device.
- Before closing charging port cover, please confirm that the charging interface protective cover is closed. If the charging port cover is closed and the charging interface protective cover is open, water or dust may enter the interior of the charging port, causing a malfunction.
- When charging vehicle, power battery under floor and on-board charger in front compartment are in operating condition. At this time, "click" sound of relay engagement is heard several times, which is normal.
- After charging is completed, disconnect the charging gun of charging device, then disconnect power supply plug.
- If the vehicle is not used for a long time, it is recommended to charge and discharge once a month to prolong service life of power battery.
- Before starting vehicle, make sure that charging device is disconnected, charging port cover and charging interface protective cover are closed, otherwise, water or foreign matters may enter charging port terminals and affect normal use.
- When charging port is frozen, use a hair dryer, etc. to thaw it. If charging gun is connected forcibly in frozen condition, it will cause malfunction.
- If there is foreign matters on charging gun or in charging port, it is forbidden to connect it forcibly when it cannot be connected. Please contact the authorized service station. If it is connected forcibly, charging device and vehicle may be damaged.
- Do not use electric appliances for a long time when vehicle is powered on. When it prompts that power battery is low, insert charging gun to charge in time, or use engine to charge when vehicle is in READY mode, otherwise, it may lead to power loss of power battery and failure to start vehicle; In this case, insert charging gun to recharge it before restarting; If vehicle still cannot be started, please contact the authorized service station.
- When power meter indicator on instrument cluster enters red warning bar, it indicates that the power battery is low. It is recommended to charge when the power drops to the red warning bar or power mode is switched from EV electric mode to HEV hybrid mode. It is not recommended to charge after power is completely depleted, otherwise it will affect the service life of power battery. In oder to ensure the normal operation of hybrid transmission, when vehicle power battery is low, the vehicle will automatically switch from EV electric mode to HEV hybrid mode.

DC charging (fast charging)

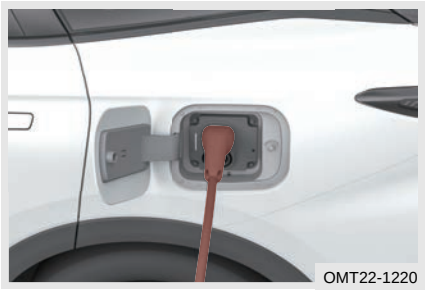

OMT22-1230

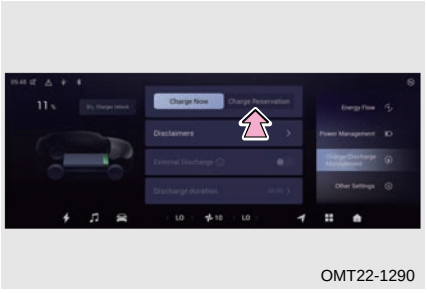
1. Park vehicle in charging area, shifting the gear to P and apply the parking brake;
2. Select charge now in new energy setting screen of head unit, vehicle is powered off;
3. Push center rear of the charging port cover to open it;
4. Remove DC special charging gun from charging pile, unplug protective cover of DC charging port, and insert charging gun into DC charging port until a slight sound is heard;
5. After charging is completed, press and hold the upper button on charging gun to unplug the charging gun from DC charging port;
6. Close protection covers of DC charging port and charging gun, and then close charging port cover.

⚠ WARNING

- It is strictly forbidden to use AC/DC adapter for charging, as it will cause damage to the vehicle and personal injury.
- Never unplug charging gun forcibly when charging vehicle, otherwise it may cause damage or danger.
- Keep charging device out of the reach of children, and the persons who need care such as children are prohibited from charging.
- Refueling and charging cannot be performed at the same time. When charging gun is inserted, do not refuel and keep a sufficient safe distance from inflammables, otherwise it may damage device and cause personal injuries when charging cable is not inserted or unplugged according to regulations.

Charge reservation


OMT22-1220


OMT22-1290

Step 1: Park vehicle in charging area, shift the shift lever to P, and apply the parking brake;

Step 2: Select Charge Reservation from New Energy screen and set the start time and charging time, then switch vehicle to power off state;

Step 3: Push center rear of the charging port cover to open it;

Step 4: Unplug dust covers of AC charging port and charging gun, and insert charging gun into charging port until a slight sound is heard. After the appointed time is reached, charging will be started;

Step 5: After charging is completed, press and hold the upper button on charging gun to unplug the charging gun from charging port;

Step 6: Close dust covers of charging port and charging gun, and close charging port cover.

AC charging socket electronic lock

The vehicle AC charging socket is equipped with an electronic lock function, which prevents the charging gun from being plugged in and pulled out with electricity, and avoids charging safety problems.

■ Locking of electronic lock

Use 32A AC charging pile that meets the national standard for charging. After the charging gun is inserted in place and after the electronic lock is automatically locked, the vehicle will start charging.

> ⚠ WARNING
>
> After the electronic lock is locked, if you need to remove the charging gun, please unlock the electronic lock before pulling out the gun; Do not pull the gun forcibly, so as not to damage the electronic lock or charging gun and other charging equipment.

■ Unlocking of electronic lock

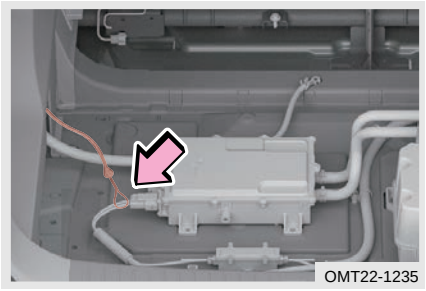
Normal electronic lock unlocking is divided into the following two ways:

1. Press the lock button on smart key first, then press the unlock button on it to unlock the electronic lock, and gently press the mechanical lock button on the charging gun to pull out the charging gun.
2. Without using the smart key, hold the charging gun by your hand and press the button on the charging gun with your thumb. When you hear the electronic lock unlocking sound, first lift your thumb, and then quickly press the mechanical lock button on the charging gun again to pull out the charging gun.

READ

- If the charging gun is not pulled out after the electronic lock is unlocked, the electronic lock will be automatically relocked after several seconds.
- If the vehicle is in the unlocked state and the electronic lock is in the locked state, it is necessary to close the door and lock the vehicle before performing above electronic lock unlocking operation.

Releasing Charging Gun Manually (Only for AC Charging)


OMT22-1235

If charging gun cannot be unplugged from AC charging port by pressing and holding the upper button of charging gun, it can be released manually by using the cable.

1. Make sure that the vehicle is not charged at present according to charging information displayed on instrument cluster;
2. Open the back door and lift the luggage compartment carpet;
3. Pull charging gun release cable to release charging gun manually.

⚠ CAUTION

Release cable can only be used when charging gun cannot be released from charging port by conventional methods. Continuous use may cause damage to release cable or charging device.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not try to unplug charging gun while pulling release cable. Be sure to pull release cable before trying to unplug charging gun from charging port. Failure to do so may cause electric shock and serious injuries.
- Do not perform this operation when charging vehicle or any orange high voltage cable is exposed; Failure to do so may cause electric shock and serious injuries or vehicle damage; If you are not sure how to perform operation safely, please contact the authorized service station immediately.

Charging Precautions

Charging precautions on rainy days

1. When charging in rain, please take care to protect the charging device from water ingress.
2. It is strictly prohibited to charge outdoors in extreme weather conditions such as heavy rain, typhoons, hail, etc., that exceed national standards, as this may result in charging not being able to be carried out, and even cause damage to the vehicle or charging device.
3. When charging is required after a rain shower, please confirm whether there is water entering the charging port at first. Do not charge when there are obvious water stains in the charging port, as this may result in failure to charge, in severe cases, damage to the vehicle or charging device.

Precautions for end of charging

■ Manually stop charging

1. Stop charging at first, and ensure that the electronic lock is unlocked.
2. Hold the charging gun, and press and hold the button on charging gun to unplug it.
3. For AC charging, do not forcibly unplug the charging gun when electronic lock is locked, as this may damage the charging port.
4. For DC charging, never forcibly unplug the charging gun before stopping charging, as this may damage the charging port and pose a risk of electric shock.
5. After charging is completed, it is necessary to ensure that charging gun has been unplugged completely before starting vehicle, otherwise charging device and vehicle may be damaged.
6. After unplugging the charging gun, please ensure that the charging port protective cover and charging port cover are in closed condition, so as to prevent water or foreign objects from entering the charging port and affecting the normal use.

■ Automatically stop charging

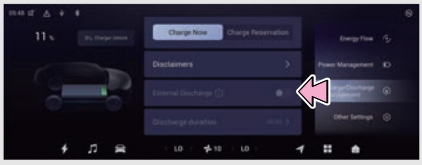
1. After charging is completed, please unlock first, and then unplug the charging plug.
2. After charging is completed, it is necessary to ensure that charging gun has been unplugged completely before starting vehicle, otherwise charging device and vehicle may be damaged.
3. After unplugging the charging gun, please ensure that the charging port protective cover and charging port cover are in closed condition, so as to prevent water or foreign objects from entering the charging port and affecting the normal use.

The charging performance of vehicle is affected when the battery temperature is too low or too high

1. If the charging port cover or charging gun is frozen due to weather or other reasons, do not open the charging port cover or unplug the charging gun forcibly.
2. When charging at low temperature, the battery thermal management system will be in operation, but the charging time will be extended and the heating power consumption will increase, which is normal.
3. In northern regions with low temperature, it is recommended that users perform charging in a heated room.
4. In northern regions with low temperature, it is recommended that you charge immediately after using the vehicle, as the battery temperature will be relatively high at this time, resulting in better charging performance.
5. In southern regions with high temperature, it is recommended that users charge in a cool and ventilated place, and do not charge in direct sunlight or in air.

External Discharging

The external discharging function uses the new energy vehicle as a power supply. Through the external discharging device (220 V/16 A) provided with vehicle, it can draw power and discharge externally, meeting the voltage requirements of general household appliances (220 V). It can be used for outdoor camping, barbecue, cooking, and other scenarios, satisfying your power needs outdoors.



OMT22-1500

With vehicle powered on, turn on/off external discharging function under charging/discharging management screen of head unit system. Before unplugging the discharging gun, it is necessary to turn External Discharge to OFF.

Usage precautions

- Avoid vehicle crushing, falling, and human trampling when using.
- Store the product in a cool and dry place when not using it.
- Ensure that the standard plug matches the specification of the product's power strip before use.
- Never contact metal terminals of the discharging power strip or vehicle charging port when discharging.
- During discharging, if any abnormal condition occurs, such as odor or smoke, please stop using it immediately.
- During discharging, never place device in luggage compartment, under the front of vehicle or near tire.
- During use, never drag the wire forcibly to avoid tension or squeezing.
- Never fall the device or pull the cable directly to move the this device. Handle it gently when moving it.
- When gun head and socket are separated and not in use temporarily, they should be covered with protective covers or properly protected.
- Do not use the power strip if its surface is damaged, rusty, broken, or the connection is loose.
- Before use, please ensure that there are no abnormalities such as damage on the surface of discharging gun, cable, and discharging power strip in the discharging device.
- If gun head is dirty or damp, please cut off the power supply first, and then use a dry and clean cloth to wipe the gun head, and ensure that the discharging gun head is clean.

Discharging operation

■ Inspection before discharging

If any of the following conditions occur, external discharge operation is prohibited, otherwise it may cause short circuit or electric shock, resulting in personal injury:

1. External discharging operation is prohibited if the connection of the external discharging device is loose.
2. Make sure that there is no water or foreign matter in the AC charging port, and the metal terminals are not rusted or corroded.
3. Make sure that the external discharging device is free from shell breakage, cable wear, rusty plug and other abnormal conditions.

■ External discharging operation

1. The vehicle is in a stationary state, gear position in P, battery and fuel are sufficient.
2. Turn on external discharging function through head unit, open charging port cover and AC charging port protective cover.

3. Insert discharging gun into AC charging port and lock securely.
4. Press the switch button on the discharging socket, and the red indicator light on the power strip remains on, indicating that the socket can be used.
5. After the discharging device is connected, the vehicle begins to discharge, the discharging indicator flashes, and the vehicle displays discharging information.
6. After discharging is completed, disconnect load (external electric appliances).
7. Turn off the external discharging function through head unit, and then press and hold upper button on discharging gun to unplug it from AC charging port.
8. Close AC charging port protective cover and charging port cover. After discharging is completed, put the discharging device into luggage compartment storage box.

READ

- When inserting DC charging gun, the external discharging function is not available.
- Before external discharging, please make sure that battery and fuel are sufficient, otherwise the external discharging function may not operate properly.
- During external discharging, the cumulative power of the external electrical appliances cannot exceed 3.3 kw, otherwise the external discharging function will stop operating.
- With vehicle powered on, if power battery is low during external discharging, the engine will automatically start to charge the power battery, which is a normal phenomenon.
- When vehicle is powered off and connected to external electrical appliances without output for a long time, the static power consumption of vehicle will increase. It is recommended that you unplug the discharging gun when not using the external electrical appliances.

Safety warning for discharging

- Never use unqualified products.
- Use special charging device for electric vehicles that meets relevant national standards.
- Before driving, please ensure that the discharging device is unplugged and the charging port cover is closed.
- Do not modify, remove or repair the charging device and related ports to avoid charging malfunction and causing fire.
- After an external discharging of vehicle, the radiator fan and air conditioning compressor may automatically turn on and operate for battery cooling, which is normal.

- Please discharge in a relatively safe environment (e. g. avoid hazardous chemicals, fire sources, heat sources, lightning, flammable and explosive environments).
- To avoid damaging the vehicle, do not shake the discharging gun when discharging, as this may damage the charging port of vehicle. During discharging, do not perform repair on the vehicle.
- It is forbidden for minors to perform discharging operations or touch and use discharging device. Discharging gun is a high voltage electrical device. Do not let minors approach it when discharging.
- During discharging, if vehicle or discharging device is abnormal (e.g., odor, smoke, etc.), please stop discharging immediately and contact the authorized service station.

Low-speed Pedestrian Warning Sound

Because the noise of electric vehicles is relatively low when driving at low speed, it is difficult for pedestrians nearby to perceive it. In order to improve driving safety, this function can send alarm sound when the vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h to remind pedestrians nearby to perceive it.

- When the vehicle is driving with vehicle speed below 30 km/h, the warning sound will increase with the increase of the vehicle speed.
- When the vehicle is not in Park (P) and is stationary, the system also can send warning sound.

IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

6-1. Emergency Call Function

ECALL (If Equipped)..... 252

6-2. Handling Vehicle in Emergency

Hazard Light..... 252

Reflective Vest..... 253

Warning Triangle..... 253

Spare Tools..... 254

6-3. If You Have a Flat Tire When Driving

Repairing Tire in Emergency..... 254

6-4. If Your Vehicle Overheats

6-5. Replacing Fuse

Fuse..... 258

Fuse and Relay Box Layout..... 259

Checking Fuse..... 260

Replacing Fuse..... 260

6-6. Vehicle Towing

Towing (If Equipped)..... 261

Weight Limit..... 262

Towing Hook..... 263

Safety Chain..... 264

Towing Light..... 265

Tow truck Brake..... 265

Impact on Mileage..... 265

Towing Hint..... 265

Towing Vehicle..... 266

Installing Towing Eyelet..... 268

6-7. If Battery is Depleted

Removing Battery..... 269

Jump-starting..... 270

6-8. Door Mechanical Switch

Mechanical Switch..... 272

6-9. Back Door Emergency Opening

6-1. Emergency Call Function

ECALL (If Equipped)

ECALL is a kind of emergency call function. When vehicle is involved in a certain level of impact (airbag inflated) or when driver or passenger is in an emergency and rescue is required, emergency information can be sent to service center by operating button manually, then the center will track vehicle location and promptly offer rescue according to received information.

READ

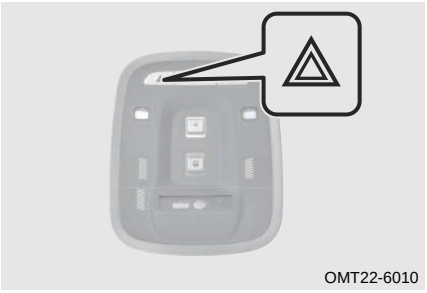
- Information communicated to the PSAP includes: vehicle type, number of seated passengers detected in the vehicle, GPS coordinates, and the VIN.
- Emergency call services are not available in all countries or regions.
- Emergency call only operates over a mobile network with an adequate signal.

6-2. Handling Vehicle in Emergency

During driving, most of dangers happen suddenly, only making correct judgment in an instant, operating properly and controlling vehicle in such case can prevent accident or reduce accident loss and personal injuries.

Hazard Light

If the vehicle is stopped at a place where traffic accidents may occur, always turn on hazard lights to warn other vehicle drivers. Stop vehicle at a place as far away from the road as possible.



Press hazard light switch to turn on and press it again to turn off.

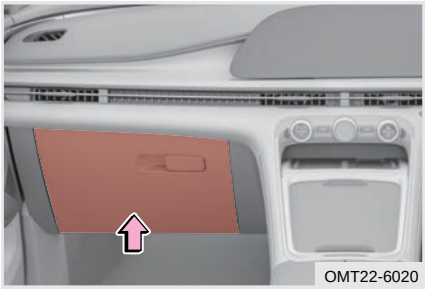
READ

- When the vehicle is powered off, hazard warning light can still work.
- When the airbags operates, the hazard light function is activated automatically.

CAUTION

To prevent battery from being depleted, do not turn on the hazard lights more than necessary when the engine is not running.

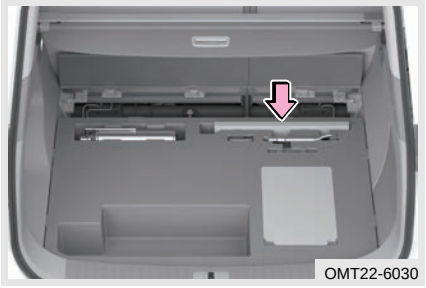
Reflective Vest


OMT22-6020

The vehicle is equipped with a reflective vest. It is recommended to place the reflective vest in the glove box (if equipped).

When the driver encounters a sudden failure to stop to handle or when an accident happens, wear the reflective vest with reflective strip facing outwards. It can warn other vehicles to avoid secondary accidents.

Warning Triangle


OMT22-6030

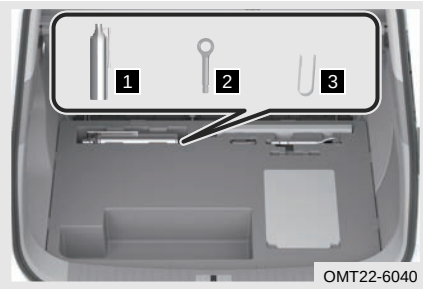
Warning triangle is located under the luggage compartment carpet.

When the driver encounters a sudden failure and stops the vehicle for repair or when an accident happens, the reflective performance of warning triangle can warn other vehicles to avoid secondary accidents.

CAUTION

- On a normal road, the warning triangle should be placed over 50 m away from your vehicle in oncoming direction.
- On a highway, the warning triangle should be place over 150 m away.
- In rain or on a corner, it should be place over 150 m away to allow vehicles behind notice the triangle as early as possible.

Spare Tools



1 Tire repair liquid

2 Towing eyelet

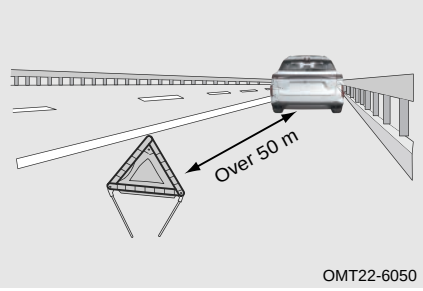
3 Wheel bolt cover remover (if equipped)

READ

If the wheel bolt is equipped with bolt trim cover, please use wheel bolt cover remover to remove it.

6-3. If You Have a Flat Tire When Driving

If a tire goes flat during driving, slow down gradually, grip the steering wheel with two hands and keep driving straightly. Stop vehicle to a safe place away from the traffic road. Park it on firm and level ground as much as possible. Avoid stopping on center or divider of a highway.



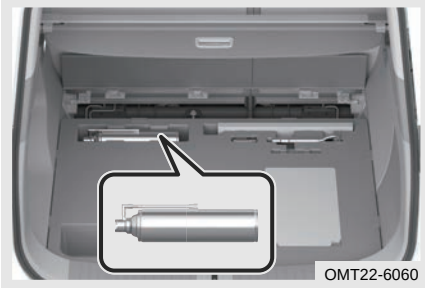
9. Apply parking brake and shift the shift lever to P position;
10. Turn off engine and turn on hazard lights;
11. Have everyone get out of vehicle and stay away from traffic;
12. Wear the reflective vest, take the warning triangle out from luggage compartment and place it over 50 - 150 m away behind the vehicle (- depending on actual condition).

CAUTION

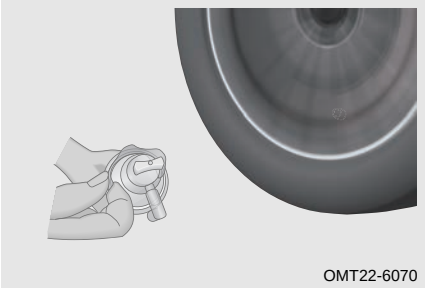
Do not continue driving with a flat tire. Driving even a short distance can damage the tire beyond repair.

Repairing Tire in Emergency

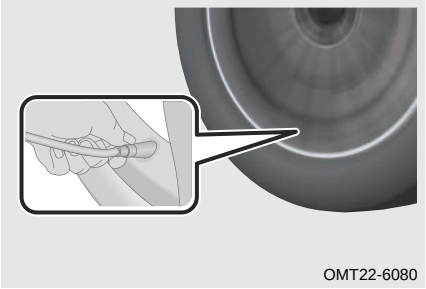
Emergency tire repair instructions for vehicles equipped with automatic inflation tire repair liquid in case of tire leakage:


OMT22-6060

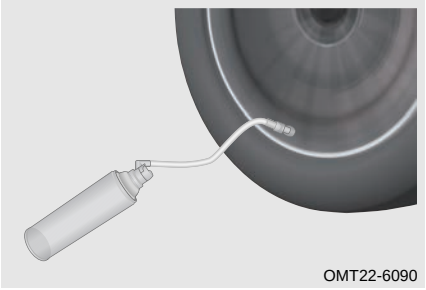
1. Open back door, lift the luggage compartment carpet and take out the automatic inflation tire repair liquid;


OMT22-6070

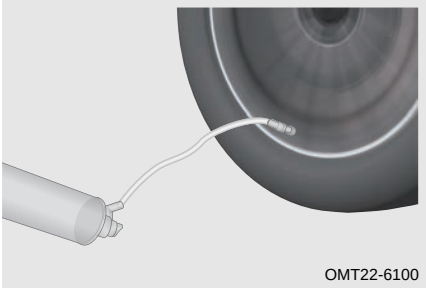
2. Shake the automatic inflation tire repair liquid well before use, and then tear off the safety belt of the junction valve;


OMT22-6080

3. Tighten the junction valve of the automatic inflation tire repair liquid to the tire valve;


OMT22-6090

4. Turn the red valve clockwise and place the bottle upside down to start inflating the tire;


OMT22-6100

5. After the automatic inflation tire repair liquid is filled, close the valve counterclockwise and screw out the junction valve. Then immediately drive for 10 km or more to complete the repair. Please go to the authorized service station or professional tire repair shop for repair and replace as soon as possible.

Note: Before using the automatic inflation tire repair liquid, please check the validity period indicated on the automatic inflation tire repair liquid tank to ensure that it is used within the validity period.

⚠ CAUTION

- The automatic inflation tire repair liquid is a disposable consumable (for one wheel only), you can go to authorized service station for purchase.
- After using the automatic inflation tire repair liquid, it supports the vehicle to drive continuously for 500 km or more. For the first 10 km, please drive at the speed of < 80 km/h. After 10 km, drive the vehicle at normal speed. It is recommended that you go to the authorized service station or professional tire repair shop for repair and replace as soon as possible.

⚠ WARNING

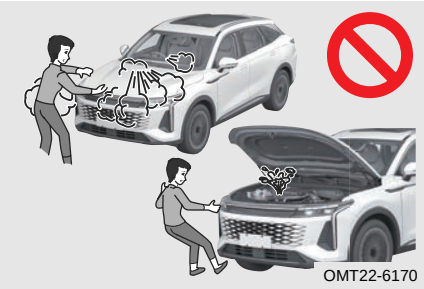
- Avoid the automatic inflation tire repair liquid contacting with the skin or eyes and keep it out of the reach of children.
- If you continue to drive the vehicle in the case of tire puncture and air leakage, it is easy to have tire blowout, endangering personal safety.
- The automatic inflation tire repair liquid is used for repairing tread puncture repair, other parts such as shoulder, sidewall and valve nozzle damage are not in the scope of repair.
- When it is required to pull out the puncture object before repairing, make sure to move the vehicle slightly so that the puncture hole is facing downward at 6 o'clock position before filling the tire with automatic inflation tire repair liquid.
- If the automatic inflation tire repair liquid splashes onto the tire or rim during use, wash it with clean water or wipe it with cloth; if the liquid accidentally gets into your eyes, please wash with clean water and seek medical attention immediately.
- When the product is used in (-40 ° C -0 ° C) ambient temperature, please warm up the product to 0 ° C or more at the heater in the vehicle to increase the filling efficiency of the automatic inflation tire repair liquid.
- It is effective to repair the puncture diameter of ⩽ 6mm, within which the puncture object can be pulled out for repair; when the puncture diameter is > 6mm, please contact the authorized service station immediately.
- After using the automatic inflation tire repair liquid, immediately drive the vehicle for 10 km or more. Never stop and stay. Please go to the authorized service station or professional tire repair shop for repair and replace as soon as possible.
- The storage temperature of automatic inflation tire repair liquid is -40 °C - 70 °C. It is forbidden to store in the vehicle under direct sunlight; and it is forbidden to contact with open fire; please be sure to store it in the tool box securely according to the requirements, do not put it in the cabin.

6-4. If Your Vehicle Overheats

If engine coolant temperature in meter alarms, it indicates that the engine coolant temperature is high, please take the following measures immediately.

1. Run safely off the road immediately, stop vehicle at a safe area, apply parking brake and shift gear position to P, then turn on the hazard warning lights. Turn off the air conditioning if it is being used.
2. If coolant or steam sprays out from coolant reservoir, stop the engine immediately. Open hood after the steam subsides. If there is no coolant or steam spraying out, keep the engine idling and check if radiator fan is operating.

If the radiator fan does not operate, stop the engine immediately and contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair.


OMT22-6170

If there is steam or coolant spraying out, it indicates that pressure in cooling system is very high. To avoid personal injury, keep the hood closed until there is no steam spraying out.

Never attempt to open the coolant reservoir cap when the engine and radiator are hot. Serious scalding injury will be caused by hot coolant and steam blown out under pressure.

3. Open hood, check that radiator, hoses and underneath of the vehicle have no obvious coolant leakage. However, water dripping from air conditioning after use is normal.

⚠ WARNING
When engine is running, keep hands and clothing away from moving fan and engine drive belt. Even if engine has been turned off, fan may still run.

4. If coolant leakage is found, stop the engine immediately and contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair.
5. If there are no obvious leakages, check if coolant level is within the range. If it is at or below "MIN", add coolant to the level between "MIN" and "MAX". Only use recommended coolant type .

⚠ CAUTION
• In emergency, water can be used if coolant is unavailable. Please go to the authorized service station to replace coolant. • If engine overheats frequently, please contact the authorized service station to have cooling system inspected and repaired.

6-5. Replacing Fuse

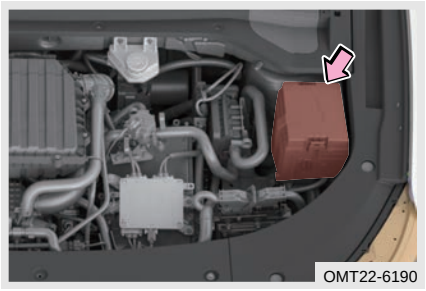
Fuse

Fuses are used to protect electrical circuits and appliances from overload. If any electrical appliance does not operate, it may be caused by a blown fuse. If this happens, check and replace the fuses as necessary.

Fuse and Relay Box Layout

Front compartment fuse and relay box

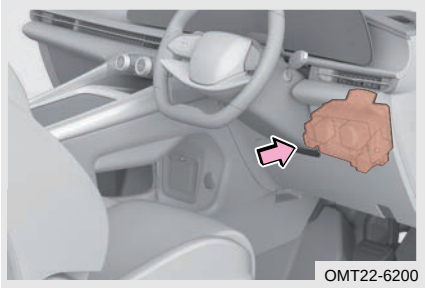
Engine compartment fuse and relay box is located on the right side of engine compartment (indicated by arrow).


OMT22-6190

1. Turn off all the electrical appliances, and power off the vehicle;
2. Disconnect the negative battery cable;
3. Remove the engine compartment fuse and relay box cover to inspect or replace the fuse.

Instrument panel fuse and relay box

Instrument panel fuse and relay box is located behind instrument panel right lower protector assembly.

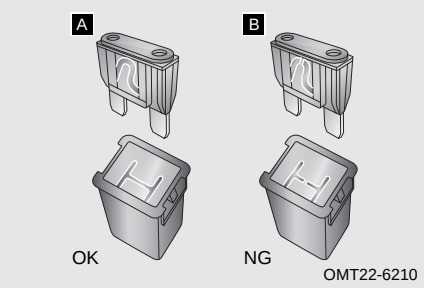

OMT22-6200

1. Turn off all the electrical appliances, and power off the vehicle;
2. Disconnect the negative battery cable;
3. Remove the instrument panel right lower protector assembly to inspect or replace the fuse.

READ

- Check suspected fuses according to the fuse and relay layout.
- To prevent damage to the vehicle, be careful when removing/installing the instrument panel storage box. Please contact the authorized service station as necessary.
- The fuse box must be clean, keep it away from dampness when opening, as dirt and moisture may damage the electrical system.

Checking Fuse



If electrical appliances do not work, please check the relevant fuses.

Check if the fuse is normal according to the illustration.

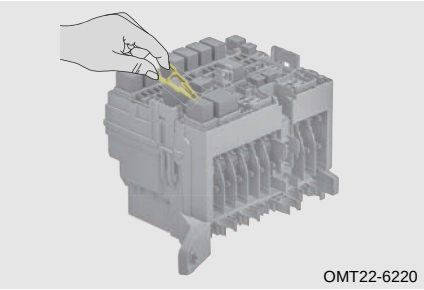
A Good fuse.

B Blown fuse.

READ

If the fuses are blown, they must be replaced.

Replacing Fuse



1. Turn off all the electrical appliances and power off the vehicle;
2. Check suspected fuses according to the fuse and relay box layout;
3. Pull the suspected fuse out by a fuse remover;
4. Check if the fuse is blown. If you are not sure whether the fuse has blown, replace the suspected fuse with spare fuse that has the same amperage rating;
5. Only the fuse that has the same amperage rating as the original one can be installed. You can see the amperage rating on the schematic diagram inside the fuse box cover.

If a spare fuse is unavailable, you can use a fuse with the same specification from other unimportant electrical appliances (such as multimedia) in an emergency.

It is better to purchase a set of spare fuses and put them in vehicle for emergency use.

⚠ CAUTION

- Never use a fuse with a higher amperage rating, otherwise electrical appliances may overload. If the fuse with specified amperage rating is still blown, it indicates that there is a malfunction on circuit. Please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
- Never replace a fuse with a wire, even as a temporary replacement. Otherwise, this may cause serious damage to electrical appliances, or even fire.
- Do not modify fuse or fuse box.

⚠ WARNING

Only install an original fuse that has same amperage rating and model as used one.

6-6. Vehicle Towing

Towing (If Equipped)

Follow instructions to tow the vehicle. Driver and passenger safety depends on proper equipment and safe driving habits. Towing will affect handling, braking, durability, performance and economy.

Do not overload vehicle or tow truck. For details, please consult a maintenance professional.

READ

- For a better power experience during towing, it is recommended to charge the vehicle in advance before towing so that the SOC is 50% or more.
- For your driving safety, it is not recommended to perform towing operations when the ambient temperature is 40°C or higher.

READ

When towing a tow truck, do not use the following safety systems (these may automatically turn off if original tow truck hook is used):

- Blind Spot Monitor (BSM) system
- Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) system
- Parking assist system (rear)

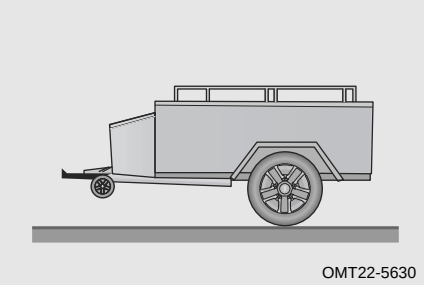
⚠ CAUTION

- Do not tow a tow truck for the first 1,000 km (600 miles) of your vehicle. Failure to do so will damage engine, transmission, differential, wheel bearing and other power system components.
- Damage caused by towing tow truck is not covered by the warranty.

Weight Limit

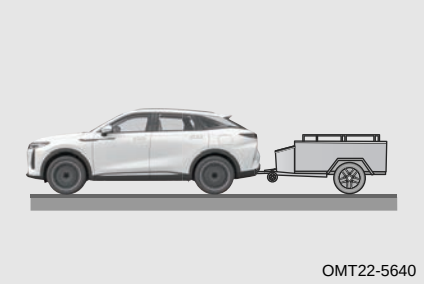
The total weight of tow truck, the total weight of the vehicle and the weight of tow truck head must be within the limits specified in towing load table of tow truck.

■ Total weight of tow truck:


OMT22-5630

The sum of tow truck and its load weight.

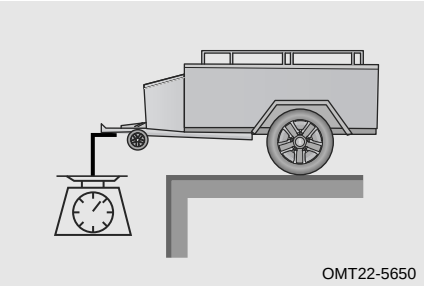
■ Total weight of vehicle:


OMT22-5640

The total weight of tow truck and towing vehicle includes tow truck hook, vehicle passenger, and vehicle load.

READ
Trailer size boundary = trailer drag coefficient * windward area boundary (-reference: 0.37*4.28=1.583)

■ Weight of tow truck head:


OMT22-5650

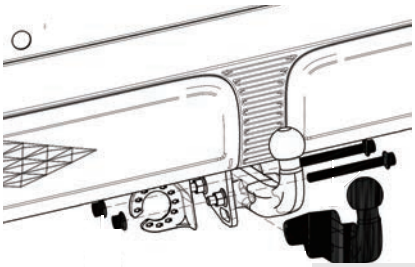
The weight applied to tow truck tongue. Change the weight by changing weight distribution when loading tow truck.

> ⚠ CAUTION
>
> Be aware of the weight difference in towing load when towing at high altitudes. At altitudes above 1,000 m (3,280 ft 10 in), it is important to reduce the towing load by 10% under total weight heading in the maximum tow truck towing load table for every 1,000 m (3,280 ft 10 in) increase in height. If the specified maximum total towing weight is exceeded, engine and other power system components may be damaged.

Towing Hook

Use a suitable towing hook when towing a tow truck. It is recommended to use the original towing hook. To ensure a smooth tow, the original hole drilled by vehicle manufacturer is used. For more information, please consult a maintenance professional.

tow truck hook mounting point



OMT22-5620

1: Vertical load: maximum 75kg

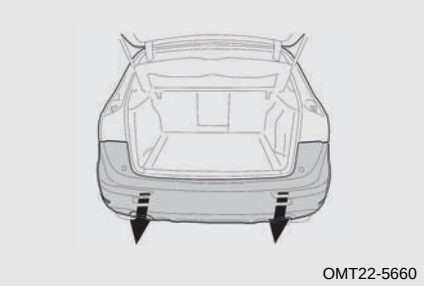
2: Maximum allowable rear overhang: 1112.24mm

3: Horizontal traction 1600kg.

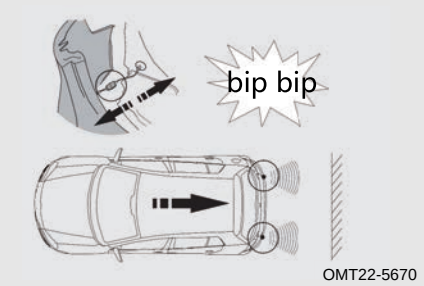
> ⚠ CAUTION
>
> When towing, be sure to attach safety chains. The chain passes under the tow truck tow frame and is attached to the tow truck hole to ensure the safe loading of the tow truck.

> ⚠ WARNING
>
> When towing, be sure to attach safety chains. The chain passes under the tow truck tow frame and is attached to the tow truck hole to ensure the safe loading of the tow truck.

Installation of tow truck hook

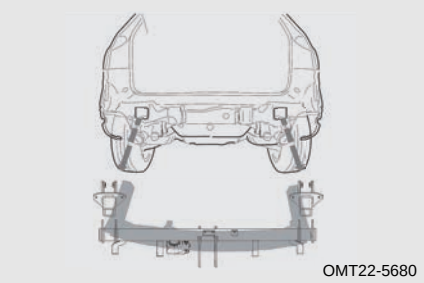

OMT22-5660

1. Remove the rear bumper and collision beam.



OMT22-5670

2. Removing wiring harness.


OMT22-5680

3. First install the left and right mounting bracket components, and then install the tow truck hook beam assembl

Safety Chain

If the tow truck pulls away unexpectedly, a safety chain must be used as a precaution. It should pass under tow truck tongue and be secured to the hook. Allow enough slack for the vehicle to turn completely.

⚠ WARNING
Before driving, make sure that the safety chain is securely attached to tow truck and the vehicle. Towing is dangerous when safety chain is not securely attached to tow truck and the vehicle. If coupler or hook ball is damaged, the tow truck may move into the other lane and cause a collision.

Towing Light

Do not automatically connect the tow truck lighting system directly to lighting system on the vehicle. This can damage electrical system and lighting system. Please consult a maintenance professional to connect lighting system.

Tow truck Brake

Check the maximum weight limit specified by towing load table, if tow truck weight exceeds the total weight of tow truck (tow truck without brake), tow truck brake is required. If the tow truck is equipped with brake, make sure that it meets specifications.

> ⚠ WARNING
>
> Do not connect hydraulic tow truck brake system to brake system of the vehicle. Connecting hydraulic tow truck brake system directly to brake system of the vehicle is dangerous and can result in insufficient braking or even personal injury.

Impact on Mileage

Towing tow truck will add weight and drag to the towing vehicle. As a result, mileage will be drastically reduced. Although trip planning function adjusts estimates based on towing mode, the actual energy consumption will still vary. Therefore, distance and charging destination need to be planned accordingly.

Towing Hint

Before driving

- Make sure that your vehicle is in near normal condition when connecting a loaded or empty tow truck. Do not drive the vehicle if the front position of the vehicle is abnormally tilted up or down. Check if the front weight of the vehicle is correct, suspension parts are worn, and the tow truck is overloaded. Contact professional maintenance personnel to check the vehicle.
- Make sure that tow truck cargo is secured to prevent movement.
- Make sure that rear view mirrors comply with all national regulations. Check it out.
- Before driving, check the operations of vehicle and tow truck towing and connection between vehicle and tow truck. After driving a short distance, stop the vehicle and check all lights and connections.

Driving

- Vehicle handling varies depending on the type of tow truck being towed, so practice turning, reversing, and stopping in areas with smooth traffic.
- Take some time to get used to extra weight and length.

- Do not exceed 100 km/h when towing the tow truck. If the maximum speed for a towing tow truck is less than 100 km/h by local law, do not exceed the specified speed.

⚠ CAUTION
If speed of the vehicle that tows tow truck exceeds 100 km/h , the vehicle may be damaged. • Shift to a low gear when going uphill to reduce the possibility of overloading and overheating of engine. • When going downhill, always pay attention to the speed, and use brake if necessary. Depressing brake pedal for a long time may cause the brake to overheat and lose power.

Parking

Avoid parking a vehicle with a tow truck on a slope. Otherwise, follow the instructions below.

■ Parking on a slope

1. Apply parking brake and brake.
2. Check if someone is blocking wheels of the vehicle and tow truck when applying braking.
3. After blocking wheels, slowly release parking brake and brake so that the wood block bears the load.
4. Firmly apply the parking brake.
5. Shift the shift lever to P position.

■ Starting on a slope

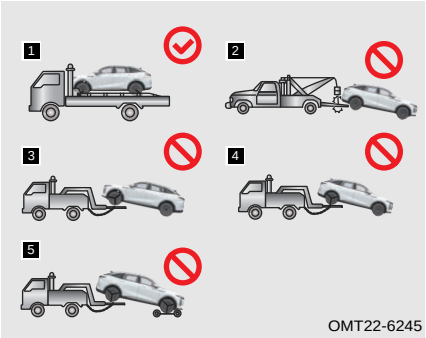
1. Start the vehicle.
2. Release parking brake and slowly pull away from wheel block for a short distance.
3. Park the vehicle on the nearest level, apply parking brake, and lift wheel block.

Towing Vehicle

If the vehicle needs to be towed, it is recommended to contact authorized service station or professional towing services department, or ask for help from the roadside rescue service organization you have joined.

⚠ WARNING
• Damage caused by transportation is not covered by the warranty. • To transport the vehicle, follow the instructions below strictly. • Do not tow your vehicle only with ropes or chains by other vehicles.

Using platform trailer



Please use **1** platform rescue vehicle to load your vehicle.

Vehicle towing precautions are as follow:

- Tow with four wheels off ground. Do not use the rescue method **2** **3** **4** **5** shown in the figure.
- Before towing, shift the gear position to N, turn on hazard light, and close the doors.
- During towing, nobody is allowed to seat in the accident vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

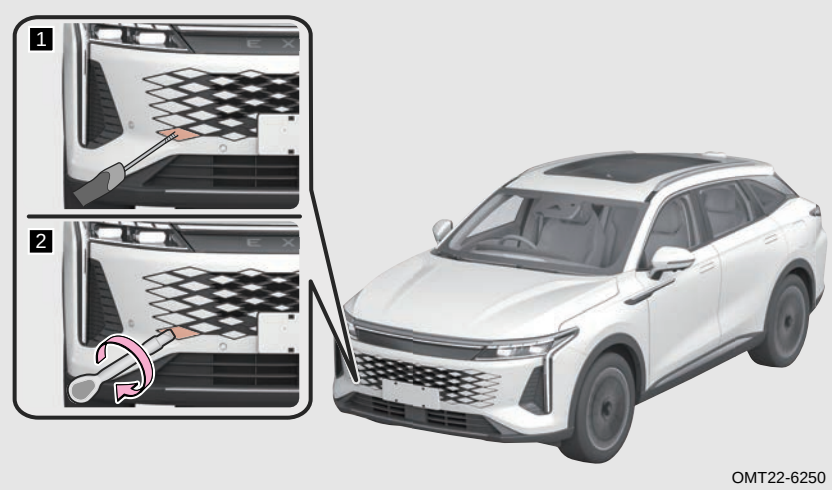
Do not move the vehicle with forklift when vehicle is broken down.

⚠ WARNING

- No person or object is allowed behind the trailer when the vehicle is pulled onto the platform rescue vehicle, otherwise it may cause personal injury or death.
- The vehicle can only be towed away from the site if there is no safety risk. If the vehicle power battery pack has deformation, leakage, smoke, etc., the safety risk should be solved first.

Installing Towing Eyelet

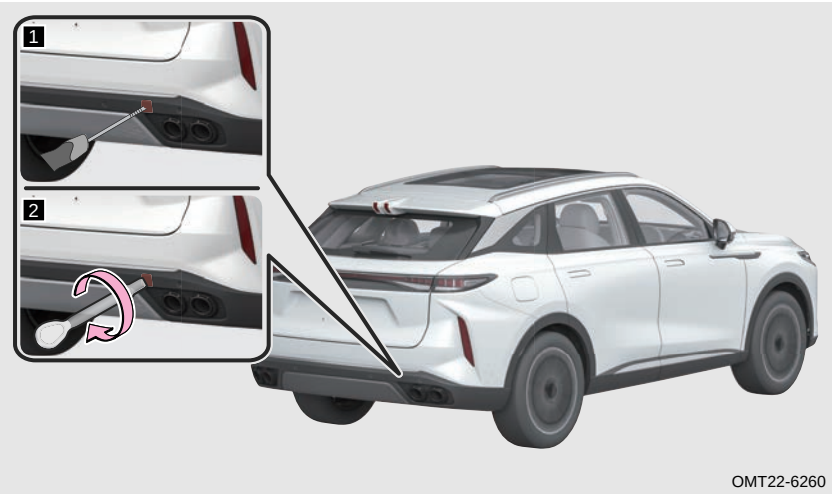
■ Installation position of front towing eyelet



1 Use a screwdriver with its tip wrapped with tape to remove the towing eyelet hole cover;

2 Install towing eyelet into eyelet hole in a clockwise direction. Then tighten it firmly with wheel bolt wrench.

■ Installation position of rear towing eyelet



Installation position of rear towing eyelet is located on the bottom of rear right side of the vehicle.

1 Use a screwdriver with its tip wrapped with tape to remove the towing eyelet hole cover;

2 Install towing eyelet into eyelet hole in a clockwise direction. Then tighten it firmly with wheel bolt wrench.

⚠ CAUTION

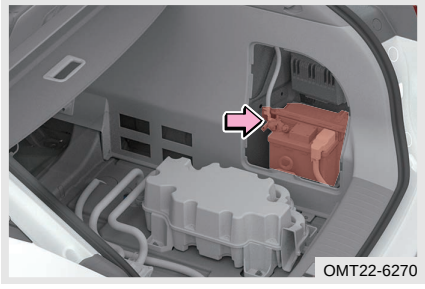
- Only use specified towing eyelet. Otherwise, vehicle may be damaged.
- Towing rope or towing bar can be installed only when towing eyelet is installed in place.
- Both drivers must be familiar with the towing process, otherwise they cannot carry out towing work.
- Drive the vehicle slowly and smoothly when towing. Impact due to excessive tension may damage the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Make sure that towing eyelet is installed securely. Otherwise, the towing eyelet may become loose when towing, which may cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

6-7. If Battery is Depleted

Removing Battery


OMT22-6270

The following steps must be followed when removing and installing the battery:

1. Turn off all the electrical appliances, and power off the vehicle;
2. Open the luggage compartment, remove the right protector;
3. Remove the negative (-) battery terminal cable;
4. Remove the positive (+) battery terminal cable;
5. Remove the battery holder and the battery;
6. Install a new battery that has same specification as used one. Install the new battery properly in the reverse order of removal.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

The used battery contains sulfuric acid and lead and should not be disposed at will. Please handle according to the local laws and regulations or discard at a local qualified waste disposal station.

CAUTION

Be careful to avoid the metal tool contacting both electrodes of the battery at the same time or touching the positive electrode and the vehicle body at the same time.

WARNING

- Do not leave battery within the reach of children.
- Do not smoke, use matches, cigarette lighters or open flames near the battery.
- Always wear gloves and safety glasses during operation, as battery acid is strongly corrosive. Do not lean on the battery.
- If acid spills on your skin or clothes, the liquid must be neutralized with alkaline water (soap), and then wash it with clean water. Get emergency medical attention immediately if necessary.

Jump-starting

To avoid vehicle damage or personal injury due to improper operation, if you are unsure about how to follow the procedure, We strongly recommends that you seek help from professional serviceman or at an authorized service station.

CAUTION

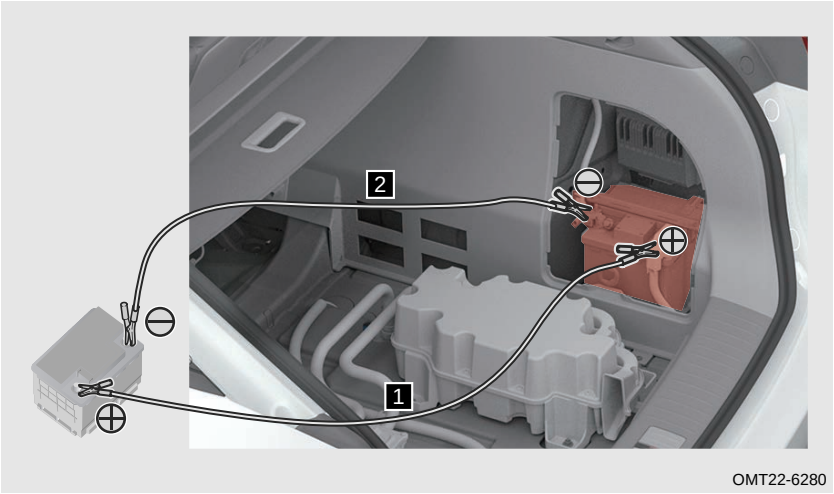
Battery voltage used for jump starting should be 12 - 13 V. Do not jump start unless you are sure that the battery voltage is correct.

WARNING

- The specified jumper cables should be used.
- Do not use cigarette lighters or allow open flame near the battery.

■ Jump-starting procedures

1. Turn off all unnecessary electrical appliances. If booster battery is installed in another vehicle, make sure of no contact between vehicles.
2. Connect cables in order shown in illustration below.



OMT22-6280

1 Connect positive (+) terminal of discharged battery to positive (+) terminal of supporting vehicle battery with positive cable.

2 Connect one end of negative cable to negative (-) terminal of supporting vehicle battery, and then connect the other end of the cable to unpainted metallic part of discharged engine to secure the jumper cable.

3. Start engine in normal way. After starting, run it for several minutes by lightly depressing accelerator pedal.
4. Disconnect cables in reverse order of connecting (negative cable first and then the positive cable).

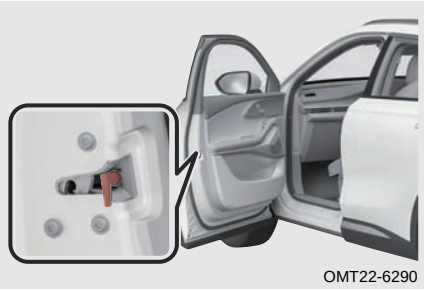
⚠ CAUTION

- During connecting, do not shift to D position to ensure that the vehicle is in the parking state.
- Do not lean on the battery when connecting.
- Never allow the clamps of the jumper cables to contact with each other or touch other metal parts of the vehicle.
- Do not connect cable to or near any part that moves when engine cranks.
- If the first starting attempt is not successful, check that if clamps on jumper cables are tight and restart the engine in normal way. If it still cannot start, please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

6-8. Door Mechanical Switch

Mechanical Switch

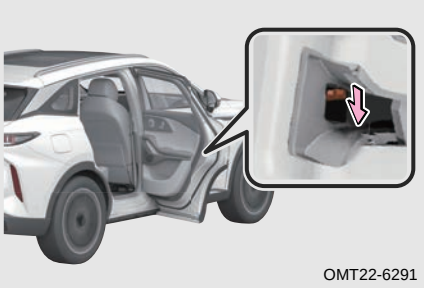
Locking front left door and rear doors manually (equipped with electrical opening function)


OMT22-6290

Vehicle cannot be locked electrically when battery is depleted or under similar conditions, in this case, the doors can be locked with emergency locking function.

Open the door, insert the mechanical key into the mechanical switch hole, turn the key counterclockwise to lock the rear right door, and turn the key clockwise to lock the front left/rear doors. Pull the door handle to make sure the door is locked.

Locking doors manually (not equipped with electrical opening function)

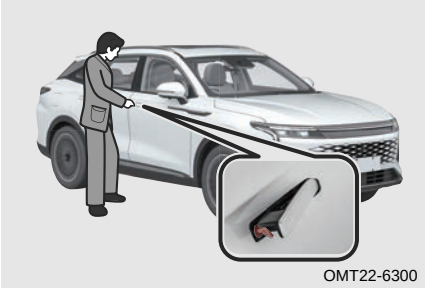

OMT22-6291

Open the door, move the button downward to lock door; Pull the door handle to make sure the door is locked.

Locking and unlocking driver door with mechanical key

OMT22-6295

1. Press and hold the front area of driver door outside handle to expand the hidden door handle.

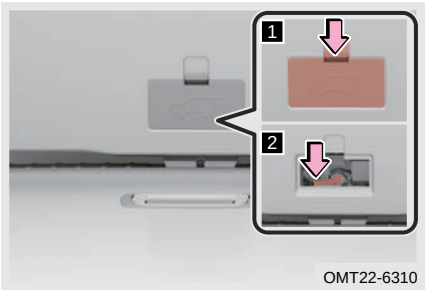

OMT22-6300

2. Pull the door handle, and insert the mechanical key into the key hole in the door outside handle, and rotate clockwise to lock the driver door and rotate counterclockwise to unlock the driver door.

⚠ CAUTION

- If above problem occurs, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- When the vehicle is locked in emergency due to power off, please check if the doors are locked successfully one by one after vehicle is locked. If not, please contact the authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

6-9. Back Door Emergency Opening



OMT22-6310

1 Back door emergency device switch is located on the back door inner garnish.

2 When the vehicle is powered off, back door fails to be opened by back door switch or smart key, or under other unexpected situations, the persons in vehicle can use the back door emergency device switch to open the back door.

Operation method:

1. Stop the vehicle as safely as possible;
2. Fold the rear seatback;
3. Get in the rear of vehicle and open emergency device cover;
4. Press down the emergency device switch with hand, release it, and then push the back door to open it.

7-1. Repair and Maintenance

Repair and Maintenance ... 276

Authorized Service Station is at Your Service 276

Reading Vehicle Identification Code Information..... 277

Safety Check..... 277

7-2. Normal Maintenance

Normal Maintenance 278

Power Battery..... 279

Checking Oil Level 282

Checking Transmission Fluid Level 284

Checking Brake Fluid Level 284

Checking Coolant Level 285

Checking Radiator and Condenser 285

Checking Tire Inflation Pressure..... 286

Checking Tires..... 287

Tire Rotation..... 288

Checking Battery..... 288

Adding Windshield Washer Fluid 289

Checking Wiper Blade 289

Checking and Replacing Air Conditioning Filter 290

7-3. Regular Maintenance

First Maintenance Information..... 291

Maintenance Schedule 292

Technical Data..... 300

7-1. Repair and Maintenance

Repair and Maintenance

There are two types of repair and maintenance: One is normal maintenance, which can be done by the customers; the other is scheduled maintenance, inspection and repair, which needs to be completed by authorized service station.

For the details of regular maintenance, inspection and repair methods, please refer to "Regular Maintenance" in this section; Regular maintenance can be helpful for you to find and eliminate potential dangers in time to prevent malfunctions. Scheduled maintenance of your vehicle is essential. Please strictly follow the maintenance schedule of "User Manual" to perform maintenance, ensuring that your vehicle maintains the best performance and good operating conditions, thus effectively extending the service life of the vehicle.

Please use the recommended fluid, or your vehicle may be damaged.

Authorized Service Station is at Your Service

Authorized service station

Only OEM parts and materials can extend your vehicle's service life. We only supplies OEM parts to authorized service station located worldwide. Therefore, only OEM parts from authorized service station can be used.

Authorized service station offers a professional service. For vehicle service, please remember that your authorized service station knows your vehicle best, and has the professional technicians and OEM parts to complete the job to the highest standard.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION
Used engine oil, brake fluid, coolant, steering fluid (if equipped), batteries and tires should only be disposed of by qualified waste disposal agencies or after consultation with manufacturers, and should not be taken out with household waste or disposed of into the communal drainage system.

Service arrangements

When go to authorized service station for vehicle service, make sure to carry all required documents. Not all the work to be performed is covered by the warranty. For detailed expenses, consult your service advisor. Keep a service record on your vehicle. Usually, this record can provide valuable reference information.

Prepare a list sheet covering vehicle malfunctions and specific service items. If you have had an accident or any item serviced is not included in the service records, let your service advisor know.

If you list many service items and you must fetch your vehicle on the day, communicate with your advisor to rank the items by priority.

Reading Vehicle Identification Code Information

The vehicle Identification code information can be readout by installing the malfunction diagnosis device, used for inspections and maintenance.

Do not install electrical components other than the diagnosis device to the connector. Doing so may cause unexpected problems to occur, such as having a bad effect on electronics or damaging the battery.

Safety Check

It is better to perform a safety check before driving vehicle, which will improve your driving safety and enjoyment.

⚠ WARNING
While inspecting vehicle, do not start the vehicle.

Daily check
Check whether paint surface is scratched, light shade is damaged, body is tilted, wheel bolts are missed or loosened, water/oil leakage of chassis occurs, door/hood/back door/glass is damaged.
Check that engine oil level, brake fluid level, coolant level, steering fluid level (if equipped) and windshield washer fluid level is normal.
Check cold tire pressure and conditions (such as: wear, swelling, aging cracks, mechanical damages, etc.). Also check the spare tire.
Check whether seat belt buckles fasten securely. Make sure belts are not worn or frayed.
Check whether lighting of lights is normal.
Check whether meter indicators are normal.

Monthly check
Clean vehicle surface, inside of hood (dust on surface of radiator and condenser, and remaining oil of engine body), vehicle interior and luggage compartment.
Check assembly, pipes, hoses and tanks for leaks; Check whether battery and cable are corroded and loosened; Check whether circuits are damaged, loosened or disconnected; Check that no water/oil leakage has occurred.
Check whether air condition is operating properly.

Check whether parking brake is operating properly.
Check whether spare fuses and spare tools (such as: jack, wheel bolt wrench, etc.) are equipped.

READ
Used engine oil, brake fluid, coolant, batteries and tires can be disposed only by qualified waste disposal agencies, or consult supporting manufacturers for disposal of them. It is not permitted to dispose of them with household waste or discharge them into public drainage system.

7-2. Normal Maintenance

Normal Maintenance

Be sure to follow the correct maintenance procedures provided in this section if you perform do-it-yourself maintenance.

This section only lists the simple maintenance instructions which can be performed by customers. However, there are still many items that have to be maintained by qualified technicians with special tools.

⚠ CAUTION

- Check for any tools or cloths that may have been left behind before closing the hood.
- Do not drive vehicle with the air filter removed, otherwise, excessive engine wear could occur.
- Correctly add fluid to the appropriate level. If some fluid splashes onto the vehicle, be sure to immediately wash it off with a wet cloth, to avoid damage to the painted surface.

⚠ WARNING

- If the engine is very hot, do not open the coolant reservoir cap to prevent scalding injury.
- When the engine is running, keep hands, clothing and tools away from engine drive belts and cooling fan.
- Do not smoke near fuel filler or battery, otherwise, it may cause sparks or open flames, resulting in a fire.
- There is a high voltage in the electronic ignition system. Do not touch these components while the engine is running or the vehicle power is turned on.
- Right after driving, engine, radiator, exhaust manifold and cylinder head will be very hot, so never touch them. Prevent any loose clothing from getting caught in the fan and causing personal injury because the cooling fan may automatically start and run at any time.

Power Battery

Basic function of power battery

The power battery is the power and energy source of vehicle and can be charged and discharged repeatedly. The power battery is charged by an external power supply, and can also be charged by means of energy recovery when braking or coasting.

The vehicle has intelligent recharging function. When the function is triggered, 12 V battery will be charged by power battery. If the vehicle is placed in a high-temperature environment, it is also possible to trigger the power battery cooling request during intelligent recharging process, which will activate the A/C to cool the power battery to avoid damage to the power battery. Therefore, when the vehicle is started again after being placed for a period of time, SOC or pure electric driving mileage displayed on instrument cluster will decrease, which is a normal phenomenon.

Power battery is a special chemical product, which needs to be used and maintained properly, so proper daily use and maintenance is very important for performance maintenance. At the same time, power battery will decline naturally due to chemical characteristics. Therefore, for vehicles that have been used for a period of time, when trip mileage decreases after battery is fully charged, it is recommended to go to the authorized service station for inspection.

The optimal ambient temperature and charging temperature range of the power battery is 25 ± 5℃. When the temperature is too high or too low, the battery will limit the output power, and the pure electric driving mileage will be shortened. It is recommended that you use the vehicle in an environment above -20 ℃; If it is in a special circumstance, it is recommended to switch the vehicle to HEV mode and use the engine to help drive the vehicle.

When the power battery is low, it is recommended to charge immediately or switch power mode from EV to HEV, and it is not recommended to charge after power battery is depleted, otherwise service life will be affected. In oder to ensure the normal operation of hybrid transmission, when power battery is low, the power mode will switch form EV to HEV automatically.

Do not use electric appliances for a long time when the vehicle is not started. When it prompts that power battery is low, insert charging gun to charge in time, or use engine to charge when vehicle is in READY mode, otherwise, it may lead to power loss of power battery and failure to start vehicle; In this case, insert charging gun to recharge it before restarting; If vehicle still cannot be started, please contact authorized service station.

The power battery is located under the body floor, and please drive carefully and prevent it from bumping when the vehicle passes over bumpy roads or is driven on bumpy roads. If driving on a rough road or wading road (over 15 cm deep), please slow down.

■ Due to the influence of chemical characteristics of power battery itself and for the purpose of better protecting the power battery, it is normal if the following conditions exist:

1. The power performance of the vehicle will be weakened when the power battery is in low charge.
2. When driving in high or low temperatures, there may be an increase in power consumption and a reduction in driving range.
3. The charge and discharge performance of power battery at high or low temperature will be weakened, and the charging time will become longer, which is a normal phenomenon.
4. When the power battery is nearly fully charged, it will automatically switch to trickle charging mode, which may extend the final charging time. There may be deviations in the estimated charging time displayed on the large screen and instrument cluster of the vehicle.

■ Since the performance of power battery will decline in low temperature environment, the following treatment methods will help you to use the vehicle better:

1. If ambient temperature is lower than -10℃, it is recommended to park vehicle in a warm house or a garage with room temperature.
2. If there is no warm house or garage with room temperature, the vehicle has charging and heating functions of plug-in charging gun. If charging gun is connected, it is recommended to select travel reservation function half an hour before departure (travel reservation function can be set in head unit system and APP), which can increase power battery temperature to the best state and turn on air conditioning in advance, so that you can have a better driving experience.

■ In order to prevent damage to the power battery, the performance of the power battery will be reduced in high/low temperature environments. If the ambient temperature is too high or too low, the charging and discharging power will be affected.

■ When the vehicle is not used for a long time, the following methods will help power battery to be in the best state:

1. When the vehicle is not used for a long time and SOC is less than 20%, charge it as soon as possible.
2. When the vehicle is not used for a long time, park it in a place where the ambient temperature is lower than 45 ℃ and there is no ponding, and try to avoid direct sunlight.
3. When the vehicle is not used for a long time, SOC displayed on instrument cluster may be inaccurate. Do not judge the remaining power of power battery based on SOC, and charge battery fully before driving.

4. When the vehicle is not used for a long time, charge 12 V battery for 15 - 30 minutes once a month (with the vehicle in READY state, keep charging for 15 - 30 minutes).
5. When the vehicle is not used for a long time, power battery system should be fully charged once a month and then discharged to maintain the SOC at about 50%; Failure to do so may cause excessive discharge of power battery.

⚠ WARNING

- Once the vehicle is powered on, the high voltage circuit will be in a conducting state. Non-professional personnels are strictly prohibited from conducting any electrical maintenance or repairs on the vehicle while the power is on.
- Non-professional personnels are strictly prohibited to open the power battery. The units or individuals should be responsible for environmental pollution or safety accidents caused by removal or disassembly of the battery without permission.
- If the power battery fails, the battery is depleted. Even with 12 V external power supply, the vehicle cannot be jump started. please contact the authorized service station in time, never repair it without authorization.

Power battery recovery

■ Recover and disposal range

Power battery whose residual capacity and charge and discharge performance after using cannot guarantee the vehicle normal driving, or is not used again after it is removed due to other reasons.

■ Recover and disposal process

The power battery is installed on the vehicle chassis, which consists of lithium battery cells. Disposal at will can cause pollution and harm to the environment.

According to relevant regulations, vehicle owner is obliged to hand over used power battery to recycling service stations. It is strictly forbidden to hand over used power battery to other units or individuals. The vehicle owner shall be responsible for environmental pollution or safety accidents caused by unauthorized removal or disassembly of the power battery.

Be sure to dispose according to the following information or requirements. For details on the recycling and disposal of power battery, please contact the authorized service station.

1. The temporary recycling service station for vehicle used power battery is the local authorized service station.
2. The disassembly of power battery must be performed by professional serviceman with certification qualification of power battery supplier.

3. The power battery belongs to the 9th category of dangerous goods and must be transported by vehicles with the 9th category of dangerous goods transportation qualification.
4. The removed power battery should be stored in a normal temperature, dry environment, away from flammable materials, heat sources, water sources and other hazards.

> ⚠ WARNING
>
> - Do not dispose of power battery by yourself.
> - Do not sell, transfer or modify power battery.
> - When power battery needs to be repaired, removed, replaced and disposed, always contact the authorized service station.

Usage precautions for power battery

Power battery belongs to high voltage energy-storage device and dangerous goods. It is necessary to contact the authorized service station for installation and maintenance of power battery by professional serviceman who must observe related safety regulations strictly; Non-professional serviceman and improper operation and use may cause serious results such as electric shock, combustion, explosion etc. Non-professional serviceman are prohibited to install, repair power battery and abuse it beyond specified range. Power battery damage and other losses caused by using it without observing requirements or beyond specified range will not be guaranteed. Pay attention to the following:

1. Anti-shock and anti-collision

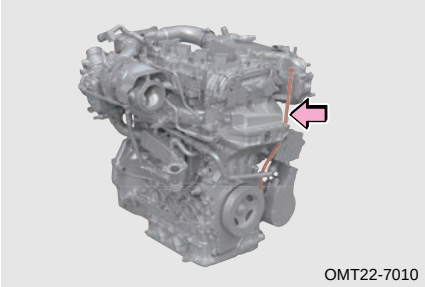
   The battery cells of power battery are connected in series and equipped with management system and various sensor devices, so be careful when driving on uneven roads to prevent power battery from bumping.
2. Heat insulation in any environment

   Keeping power battery in the best operating temperature range can greatly prolong the service life of battery and improve safety performance, so try to park vehicle in heat insulation and ventilated places.
3. Moisture-proof and water-proof

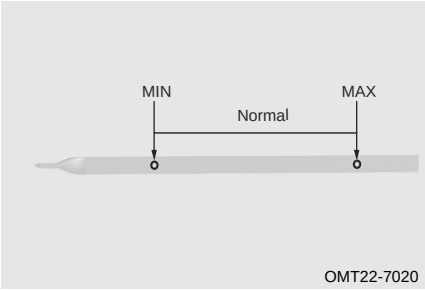
   Power battery is a high voltage energy-storage device with many high voltage control circuits and battery cells. The liquid entering power battery may cause short circuit, electricity leakage and corrosion of battery cells, electric circuits and connectors. Make sure that power battery will not be soaked by various liquids and moist air will not enter the power battery.

Checking Oil Level

With the engine stalling and cooled down, check the oil level with the dipstick.


OMT22-7010

1. Warm up the engine and then stop the vehicle on a level ground. Wait about 5 minutes after turning off engine;
2. Open hood, pull the dipstick out and wipe it with a clean and lint-free cloth;
3. Insert the dipstick to the bottom uniformly and slowly;
4. Leave the vehicle as is for approximately 3 seconds, pull the dipstick out again and check if oil level is correct;
5. Repeat above steps 3 times to improve the accuracy of inspection.

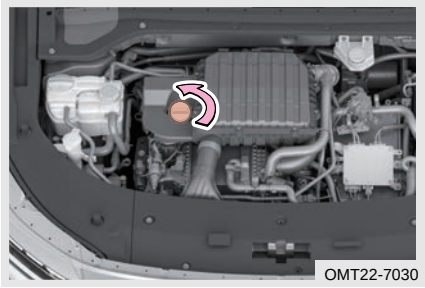


OMT22-7020

Put a cloth under the dipstick to avoid oil spilling onto engine or vehicle body.

Do not check the oil level immediately after the engine warms up, and wait until the oil returns into the bottom of engine.

■ Adding engine oil


OMT22-7030

1. Turn the engine oil filler cap counterclockwise to open it;
2. Use the funnel to add a proper amount of engine oil and check the oil level with a dipstick again;
3. When the level reaches within the correct range, turn the engine oil filler cap clockwise to tighten it.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Do not discard the waste engine oil and filter in household waste, down the drain or spill on to the ground. Otherwise, it will cause serious environmental pollution. Please dispose it according to the local regulations regarding environmental protection.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not overfill oil, or it may cause damage to engine.
- If the engine oil is replaced, the oil filter must be replaced.
- Only use recommended engine oil. For detailed information about engine oil capacity and type, please refer to "Vehicle Specifications".
- The engine oil filler cap cannot be placed up side down after removal to prevent misjudgment caused by oil backflow, and prevent oil flowed through seal ring from overflowing by itself after assembly again, which results in an illusion of oil leakage from the engine oil filler cap.
- If oil is accidentally spilled on the surface of the engine during refueling, clean the spilled oil with canvas and other tools before tightening the engine oil filler cap.

Checking Transmission Fluid Level

Checking, adding and replacing of transmission fluid should be done by professionals. Please contact the authorized service station.

Checking Brake Fluid Level

OMT22-7040

Brake fluid level should be between the "MIN" and "MAX" marks. If the level is at or below the "MIN" mark, add brake fluid and contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

READ

The brake fluid reservoir shapes are different depending on the configuration. Please refer to the actual vehicle configuration.

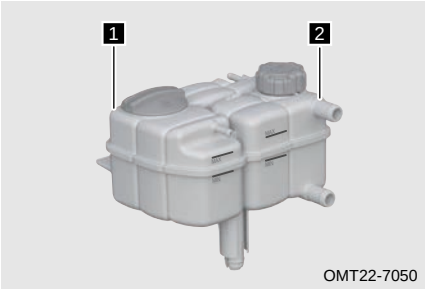
⚠ CAUTION

- If brake fluid splashes onto the painted surface of vehicle body, be sure to clean it with a wet sponge or wash it off with water to avoid corroding the parts or painted surface.
- As the brake fluid is highly absorbent, do not leave the brake fluid reservoir cap open for a long period of time.
- Only recommended brake fluid can be used. Otherwise, all the direct or indirect loss incurred are at user's own risk.

⚠ WARNING

Never allow brake fluid to contact your skin or eyes. If the brake fluid splashes into your eyes or on your skin, flush the area immediately with a great quantity of water. Get emergency medical attention immediately if necessary.

Checking Coolant Level



1 High Temperature Coolant (Engine coolant)

2 Low Temperature Coolant (Power battery coolant)

When vehicle is cold, the coolant level should be between the "MAX" and "MIN" marks. If the level is at or below the "MIN" mark, add coolant and contact authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

⚠ CAUTION

- If coolant level falls rapidly, check radiator, water hose and water pump for leakage.
- Do not use poor quality coolant, because the engine becomes excessively hot as running and inferior coolant cannot provide sufficient cooling and corrosion protection.
- Only recommended coolant can be used. Otherwise, all the direct or indirect loss incurred are at user's own risk.

⚠ WARNING

- The coolant is poisonous, so pay extreme caution not to spray the fluid on any part of the vehicle, human body or ground when adding coolant. If the coolant accidentally gets on your skin or eyes, please wash the affected area with a great quantity of water and consult a doctor immediately.
- When engine is hot, the cooling system will be under high pressure. In this case, do not open the coolant reservoir cap, otherwise, the escaping steam may cause scalding injury.

Checking Radiator and Condenser

After the vehicle runs for a period of time, the front surface of condenser and radiator could be blocked with some insects, leaves and other objects, which could affect the performance of air conditioning and cooling system, resulting

in air conditioning operating improperly and cooling system overheating. It is necessary to clean radiator and condenser at that time.

Radiator: It is recommended to clean the radiator surface every year. With engine turned off and cooled down, use compressed air or water to clean the radiator fins and blow off the insects and leaves, etc. Air and water pressure should not exceed 150 kPa. Otherwise, the radiator fins could be damaged.

Condenser: Clean the condenser by blowing air from rear to front through the radiator when the engine is turned off and cools down.

⚠ CAUTION

- The material of radiator fins has good thermal conductivity, which is used to cool the coolant. Do not brush the fins, or it may cause damage to the fins, affecting the cooling effect.
- Do not spray water on the hot radiator while the engine is hot, otherwise, the generated high temperature steam may result in personal injury. Clean the radiator only when the engine is turned off and cools down.

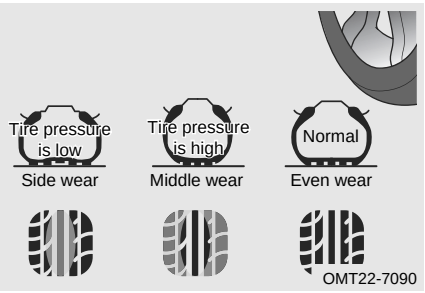
Checking Tire Inflation Pressure

You should check the tire inflation pressure at least once a month and correct the pressure as required.

For provisions about the tire inflation pressure, please refer to the tire pressure label on driver side B pillar (subject to actual vehicle) for details.

Incorrect tire inflation pressure will lead to excessive fuel consumption, shorten the tire service life and reduce the vehicle stability. Therefore, you should drive the vehicle with proper tire pressure.

Be sure to keep proper tire inflation pressure. Otherwise, the following conditions may occur and result in an accident, causing death or serious injury.



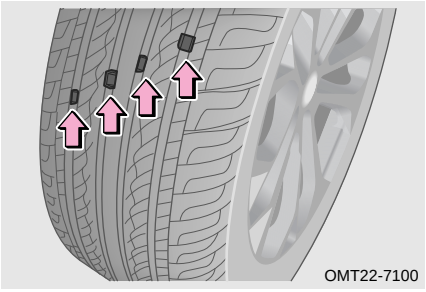
- Excessive wear;
- Uneven wear;
- Poor handling;
- Possibility of blowouts resulting from overheated tires;
- Poor sealing of the tire bead;
- Wheel deformation or tire separation;
- A greater possibility of tire damage caused by poor road conditions.

⚠ CAUTION

- Use a tire pressure gauge to check cold tire inflation pressure. Visual inspection of a tire may cause inaccurate estimation on inflation pressure.
- It is normal that the tire inflation pressure increases after driving for a period of time.
- Be sure to install tire valve caps properly. Otherwise, dirt could get into the valve core and cause blockage. If the caps are lost, install new ones immediately.
- If the tire needs to be inflated frequently, please contact authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

Checking Tires

Check if there are any cuts, foreign matters and uneven wear on tire tread regularly.



Check the tire tread for tread wear mark. When tread wear reaches its limit, tread will be in the same plane as the wear band. If such condition occurs, it indicates that performance and safety of tire seriously decrease, and replacement is necessary.

If a tire often leaks or cannot be properly repaired due to a cut or other damages, it should be replaced.

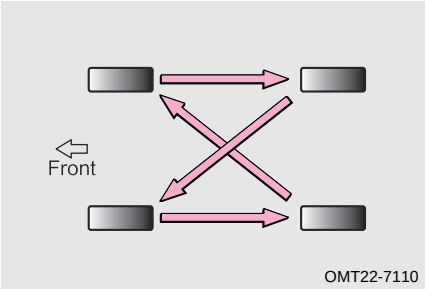
ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Always discard a used tire carefully. It should be handled according to the local regulations regarding to environmental protection.

⚠ CAUTION

If air leakage occurs while driving, do not continue to drive. Driving even a short distance can damage a tire beyond repair.

Tire Rotation



To equalize tire wear and extend tire service life, we recommend that you should rotate your tires regularly. It is recommended to rotate your tires every 10,000 km. Tire rotation cycle may vary according to driver driving habits and road surface conditions.

READ

It is recommended to check and adjust the four wheel alignment during the first maintenance. Perform inspection and adjustment every 20,000 km (this is normal maintenance item which is not covered by warranty).

WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may affect handling performance, which may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury:

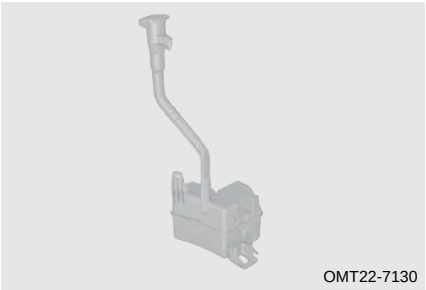
- Speedometer is affected by tire size. If the tire size (diameter) is different from the genuine one, it will not display accurate speed, and may result in accidents, such accidents loss are not covered by the warranty;
- Do not mix tires from different manufacturers, of different models or tread patterns;
- Do not mix tires with remarkably different tread wear;
- Do not mix differently constructed tires (radial, bias-belted or bias-ply tires);
- Do not use tires that were used on another vehicle;
- Do not use tires if you do not know how they were used previously.

Checking Battery

Check and make sure that the battery terminals are not corroded and that there are no loose connections, external cracks, or loose fixing clamps.

Your vehicle is equipped with a maintenance-free battery. The new battery should have the same specifications with the genuine one. We recommend that you should go to a authorized service station for battery replacement.

Adding Windshield Washer Fluid

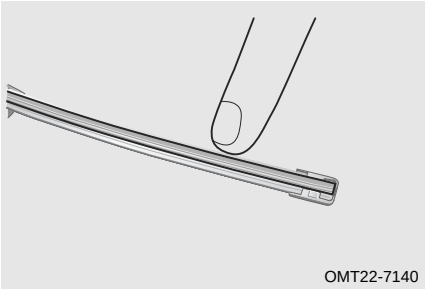

OMT22-7130

If no washer fluid is sprayed from washer nozzles, stop operating washers and check if it is necessary to add washer fluid. If it cannot operate properly after adding washer fluid, please go to the authorized service station for inspection and repair.

⚠ CAUTION

- Never add antifreeze in the windshield washer fluid, because antifreeze will damage the paint.
- Do not use water as washer fluid when temperature is below zero. Otherwise, water will be frozen, causing damage to washer.

Checking Wiper Blade


OMT22-7140

Check the roughness of wiper blade by sliding on its edge using your finger. If it is too rough, the wiper blade will not work effectively.

⚠ CAUTION

- In winter, make sure that the wiper blades are not frozen to the glass before operating them to avoid damaging the wiper blades.
- Do not use the wiper blades to remove frost or ice covered on the windshield.
- Butter, silicone and fuel may cause the wiper blades to operate improperly, and it is recommended to clean the wiper blades with glass washer fluid.
- When the blades are lifted for maintenance, the center connector position of the blades should be properly picked up.
- If there are any chips on the windscreen from gravel, please repair quickly.

■ Maintaining wiper blades

- Do not use high-pressure water jet to directly wash the wiper blades while washing the vehicle, or the wiper blades could be damaged.
- In order to prevent the formation of build up that obscures view, it is recommended to clean wiper blades using glass detergent regularly once a week.
- Apply pure water to rinse the windshield and blades after washing the vehicle in the automatic car washer, which can remove the remaining wax layer.
- For safety, it is recommended to replace the wiper blades 1 to 2 times a year, the wiper blades can be purchased at authorized service station.
- Do not operate wiper blades when windshield is dry. Doing so may scratch glass, resulting in permanent damage to wiper blades.
- Do not clean the windshield with fuel, nail polish remover, paint thinner or similar liquid, which can damage the wiper blades.
- When the windshield surface is frosted or frozen, or when dry soil, insect, sticker or other solid particles are attached to the windshield surface, clean them with a wet cloth in time. Do not use a dry cloth or remove them with wiper blades directly, otherwise it will damage the windshield and wiper blades.

■ Using wipers

- Do not swing the wiper arm manually, otherwise it may damage the wiper.
- When there is snow, leaves, branch and other objects, they should be cleaned before operating the wiper.
- Washer fluid should be added as soon as is needed, please use the windshield washer fluid as specified in this manual, and do not use tap water instead.
- In cold weather, always check if the wiper blades are frozen on the windshield before using. If they are frozen on the windshield, always unfreeze before using. Failure to do so may cause damage to the wiper motor and wiper blades. Unfreezing method: Use air conditioning heating and ventilation device to warm up. Do not pour hot water directly to blades, otherwise, windshield may break or wiper blades may deform.

Checking and Replacing Air Conditioning Filter

Air conditioning filter can prevent outside dust from entering vehicle through air conditioning outlets when driving for a long period of time, and it may be blocked after being used for a long time. If efficiency of air conditioning decreases significantly, check filter and replace it as necessary.

READ

- Do not use water to wash air conditioning filter.
- The replacement of air conditioning filter should be performed by professionals, so please contact authorized service station.
- Using air conditioning with filter removed may result in degradation of dustproof performance, affecting efficiency of air conditioning.

7-3. Regular Maintenance

First Maintenance Information

Maintenance information for the first 10,000 km (within 12 months after purchasing vehicle) (for general area)				
Date: _____ Mileage: _____				
Type of jobs	1	Check lubrication system, cooling system and fuel system for leakage.	Y☐	N☐
	2	Replace engine oil and oil filter.	Y☐	N☐
	3	Check transmission fluid level and color. Add if necessary.	Y☐	N☐
	4	Check coolant level. Add coolant or adjust concentration if necessary.	Y☐	N☐
	5	Check transmission for leakage.	Y☐	N☐
	6	Check steering tie rod boot for damage.	Y☐	N☐
	7	Check propeller shaft constant velocity universal joint boot for damage.	Y☐	N☐
	8	Check brake fluid for leakage and brake pipes for damage.	Y☐	N☐
	9	Check if brake sub cylinders work normally.	Y☐	N☐
	10	Check if tire inflation pressure is as specified.	Y☐	N☐
	11	Check belt tension of alternator and A/C compressor. Adjust tension if necessary.	Y☐	N☐
	12	Check hood hinge and tab.	Y☐	N☐
	13	Check A/C system for leakage.	Y☐	N☐
	14	Check installation condition for steering universal joint boot and check for damage.	Y☐	N☐
	15	Check if gears of transmission shift smoothly.	Y☐	N☐

	16	Check coupling bolts between chassis and vehicle body for looseness.	Y☐	N☐
	17	Check seat belts for correct operation.	Y☐	N☐
	18	Check engine working condition, electronic injection parameters and emission while idling.	Y☐	N☐
	19	Check if mechanisms function properly by testing driving.	Y☐	N☐
	20	Check that there is no obvious rusting or deformation on the power battery surface.	Y☐	N☐
	21	Check that the fixing bolt of power battery is free of crack, rusting and falling off.	Y☐	N☐
	22	Check waterproof vent valve of power battery for looseness and deformation, and vent hole for blockage.	Y☐	N☐
	23	Check power battery connector for dust, water, deterioration and deformation, replace as necessary.	Y☐	N☐
	24	Check that the appearance is intact and there are no cuts and other damages for low voltage wire harness connector; the connection is normal without looseness, falling off, water, etc.	Y☐	N☐
	25	Check that the high voltage circuit connector is connected properly without looseness, rusting, crack, etc.; the wire harness is tightened without shaking.	Y☐	N☐

Maintenance Schedule

The maintenance schedule lists vehicle maintenance items that need to be carried out. Please go to authorized service station for maintenance according to mileage in maintenance schedule.

For general area, regular maintenance interval is every 1 year or 10,000 km (-total mileage) or 10,000 km (HEV mileage), whichever comes first.

If your vehicle is often used in severe driving conditions, you should follow the maintenance requirement each 5,000 km or 6 months (whichever comes first).

I: Inspect, adjust, clean or replace if necessary; R: Replace.

For general driving conditions*											
Maintenance Item	Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
	km × 1,000	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100
For severe driving conditions*											
Maintenance Item	Months	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	60
	km × 1,000	5	10	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50
Meter Indicating System		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Video and Entertainment System		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Diagnostic Tester Inspection		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Front Wiper Blades		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Rear Wiper Blades		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Wiper System		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Cooling Effect		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Air Conditioning System		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Air Conditioning Filter		It is recommended to be replaced every 1 year or 10,000 km (whichever comes first). If the maintenance period is more than 1 year or 10,000 km, it is recommended to replace each maintenance.									
Coolant Level		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Freezing Point of Coolant		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Coolant		It is recommended to replace every 2 years or 40,000 km (whichever comes first).									
Brake Fluid		It is recommended to replace every 2 years or 40,000 km (whichever comes first).									
Brake Fluid Level		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Water Content of Brake Fluid		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Engine Oil and Oil Filter		It is recommended to replace every 1 years or 10,000 km (whichever comes first).									

For general driving conditions*											
Maintenance Item	Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
	km × 1,000	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100
For severe driving conditions*											
Maintenance Item	Months	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	60
	km × 1,000	5	10	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50
Engine Oil Level		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Transmission Fluid and External Filter Assembly		It is recommended to replace every 4 years or 40,000 km (whichever comes first).									
Transmission Fluid Level		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Fuel Filter		External fuel filter: Replace every 30,000 km; Internal fuel filter: The integrated fuel pump is maintenance free type(troubleshoot the cause of failure)									
Battery Voltage		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Shock Absorber		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Propeller Shaft and Boot		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Torque of Chassis Bolt		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Steering Gear		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Steering Column		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Steering Link, Ball and Boot		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Tire Appearance		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Tire Pattern		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Tire Inflation Pressure		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Spare Tire Inflation Pressure		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Torque of Wheel Bolt		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Tire Rotation		It is recommended to rotate your tires every 10,000 km (the optimal adjustment range is 5,000 - 7,000 km).									

For general driving conditions*											
Maintenance Item	Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
	km × 1,000	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100
For severe driving conditions*											
Maintenance Item	Months	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	60
	km × 1,000	5	10	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50
Spark Plug		Replace every 30,000 km (Fuel mileage).									
Brake Plate		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake Disc		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Air Filter		It is recommended to be replaced every 1 year or 10,000 km (whichever comes first). If the maintenance period is more than 1 year or 10,000 km, it is recommended to replace each maintenance.									
Engine Oil Pan and Drain Bolts		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Transmission Housing Body		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Related Fluid Line (-such as Steering, Brake, Fuel etc.) and Wire Harness		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
There is no obvious rusting or deformation on the power battery surface		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
The fixing bolt of power battery is free of crack, rusting and falling off		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Waterproof vent valve of power battery is not loose, deformed, and vent hole is not blocked		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Power battery connector is free of		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I

For general driving conditions*											
Maintenance Item	Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
	km × 1,000	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100
For severe driving conditions*											
Maintenance Item	Months	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	60
	km × 1,000	5	10	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50
dust, water, aging and deformation											
The appearance is intact and there are no cuts and other damages for low voltage wire harness connector; the connection is normal without looseness, falling off, water, etc		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
The high voltage circuit connector is connected properly without looseness, rusting, crack, etc.; the wire harness is tightened without shaking		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Charcoal Canister Filter (If Equipped)		Replace every 3 years or 60,000 km (whichever comes first).									
Rear drive motor (If Equipped)		Maintenance-free (except for the cause of failure).									
Battery		Maintenance-free (except for the cause of failure).									
Throttle Valve		It is recommended to clean every 15,000 km.									
Four-wheel Alignment		Check four-wheel alignment every 20,000 km and adjust if necessary.									
Fuel Vapor Rubber Pipe		It is recommended to replace every 10 years or 500,000 km (whichever comes first).									

For general driving conditions*											
Maintenance Item	Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
	km × 1,000	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100
For severe driving conditions*											
Maintenance Item	Months	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	60
	km × 1,000	5	10	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50
Refueling Hose of Fuel		It is recommended to replace every 5 years or 200,000 km for products made of ordinary rubber (such as NBR+PVC/CSM, etc.) (whichever comes first); It is recommended to replace every 10 years or 500,000 km for products made of fluororubber (whichever comes first). It is recommended to replace the above hoses timely which may cause performance defect such as crack.									
*: We recommend that you ask your authorized service station for the actual maintenance schedule applied to your vehicle.											

READ

- The frequency of scheduled inspection and maintenance services in the table is minimal. However, it may be necessary that they be performed more frequently depending on road conditions, weather, atmospheric conditions and vehicle usage. These conditions may differ from one country to another. Therefore, there may be special requirement in your country. We recommend that you ask your authorized service station for the actual maintenance schedule applied to your vehicle.
- Continue periodic maintenance beyond 100,000 km or 120 months by returning to the third column of the maintenance schedule and adding 100,000 km or 120 months to the column headings.
- For special area, there may be special maintenance specifications. We recommend that you ask your authorized service station for the actual maintenance specifications applied to your vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

- The engine oil and oil filter should be replaced more frequently if the vehicle is driven under severe conditions mentioned in the following examples*.
- It should be checked every 5,000 km or 6 months (whichever comes first) if the vehicle is driven under severe conditions mentioned in the following examples*.
- The lubricant should be replaced every 5,000 km or 6 months (whichever comes first) if the vehicle is driven in the following areas.
  - High humidity areas.
  - Mountainous areas.
  - Extremely cold and hot areas.
  - Drive on rough roads (bumpy roads, gravel roads, snow, etc.) for a long time.
  - Drive on mountain roads, uphill/downhill for a long time.
  - Drive the vehicle for a short distance frequently.
  - In many cases, drive in high temperature (higher than 32℃), heavy traffic urban road.
  - When used as a police car, taxi, commercial vehicle, trailer, etc.

⚠ CAUTION

- The air filter and air conditioning filter should be replaced more frequently if the vehicle is driven under severe conditions mentioned in the following examples*.

*Examples of severe driving conditions:

- Drive in extremely cold and hot weather (only for engine oil, engine oil level, steering and suspension system).
- Drive the vehicle for a short distance frequently (only for engine oil, engine oil level, disc brake pads and discs/front and rear axle boots and axle shaft joint portions, brake lining and drums).
- Drive on dusty roads (only for air cleaner element, disc brake pads and discs/front and rear axle boots and axle shaft joint portions, brake lining and drums, air filter element for the climate control system).
- Drive on rough and/or muddy roads (only for disc brake pads and discs/front and rear axle boots and axle shaft joint portions, brake lining and drums, air filter element for the climate control system).
- Drive in areas where road salt or other corrosive materials are used (only for fuel system, lines and connections, disc brake pads and discs/front and rear axle boots and axle shaft joint portions, brake lining and drums, inspect brake lines and check operations of parking and service brake system, steering and suspension system).
- In the coastal areas (only for fuel system, lines and connections, disc brake pads and discs/front and rear axle boots and axle shaft joint portions, brake lining and drums, inspect brake lines and check operations of parking and service brake system, steering and suspension system).
- If the vehicle is involved in a traffic accident, soaking in water, bumping, or alarming, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair in time.
- Never overcharge/discharge and change the setting parameters of power battery system without authorization.
- A/C temperature setting in the vehicle should be appropriate, and the A/C operating time should not be too long.
- Prevent the power battery system from entering water when washing the vehicle.
- The vehicle should avoid wading in too deep water. If the vehicle wades in the water, it should drive slowly to prevent water from splashing into the power battery box.
- The vehicle cannot be started when the battery power is too low.
- Before driving, check the remaining charge (SOC value) of the power battery. Please charge and then drive the vehicle if necessary according to the mileage to be driven to prevent power failure and the vehicle stopping in the middle. During driving, if SOC is lower than 30%, rapid acceleration

⚠ CAUTION

and high-speed driving should be avoided, and the vehicle should be driven to the nearest charging pile for charging as soon as possible.

- When using in high-temperature weather in summer, it is recommended to keep the vehicle stationary for 30 minutes before charging (if it needs to be charged), and then keep the vehicle stationary for 30 minutes after charging to prevent the high temperature alarm caused by the continuous use of battery system and the accumulation of heat, which will affect the service life of battery system.
- When using in low-temperature weather in winter, it is recommended to charge the vehicle immediately after using to prevent the temperature of power battery system from dropping below 0° C, which will affect the service life of battery and use safety during charging.

Technical Data

Fluid Name	Specification	After-sale Maintenance
Oil (SQRH4J15)	C5 0W-20	4.5 ± 0.2 L (replace the oil and oil filter at the same time)
Transmission Fluid (351HHB)	TITAN EG DHT 5105	4.7 ± 0.2 L
Rear drive motor (If Equipped)	Castrol BOT 805 C EV	1.4 ± 0.05 L
High Temperature Coolant (Engine coolant)	Organic Acid Technology (OAT)	8.5 ± 0.5 L
Low Temperature Coolant (Power battery coolant)	Organic Acid Technology (OAT)	8.0 ± 0.5 L
Brake Fluid	DOT4	/

⚠ CAUTION

- Filling amount is equal to discharging amount when there is no oil leakage for automatic transmission, please go to authorized service station for details.
- Only genuine parts and fluids can be used, otherwise your claim rights will be affected.
- For engine oil and transmission fluid, only use brands and specifications recommended by authorized service station.
- The above filling amount is only for reference. The specific fluid amount should be based on the actual vehicle measurement.

SPECIFICATION

8-1. Label Location

8-2. Vehicle Specifications

Vehicle Dimensions 306

Vehicle Type..... 307

Vehicle Weight..... 307

Vehicle Performance 308

Engine Performance..... 308

Drive Motor 309

Fuel System 310

Suspension System..... 311

Power Battery..... 311

Battery..... 311

Wheel Alignment..... 312

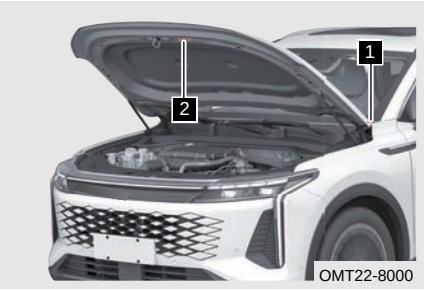
Wheels and Tires 312

Light Bulb Specification..... 313

Vehicle Components That Are Not Included in the Vehicle Size 313

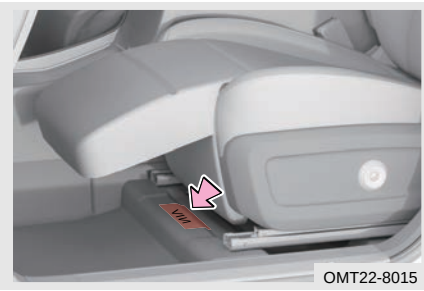
8-1. Label Location

■ Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)



1 VIN is located on upper left of driver side instrument panel, and can be seen from the outside through the windshield.

2 VIN is stamped on hood inner panel.



VIN is located under the front passenger seat.

READ

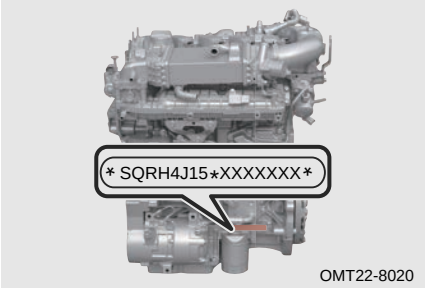
- It is forbidden to cover, paint, weld, cut, drill or remove vehicle identification number and areas around it.
- If VIN needs to be read, it is recommended to read the data through the operation of authorized service station professional serviceman.
- Other VIN locations on the vehicle: On the front left door inner panel assembly, right B-pillar inner panel assembly, front roof beam, rear floor as well as sheet metal area under rear seat; and at the drip channel on upper part of luggage compartment or on the inner panel of luggage compartment (please refer to the actual vehicle).

■ Vehicle name plate

OMT22-8020

Vehicle name plate is fixed on left quarter outer panel.

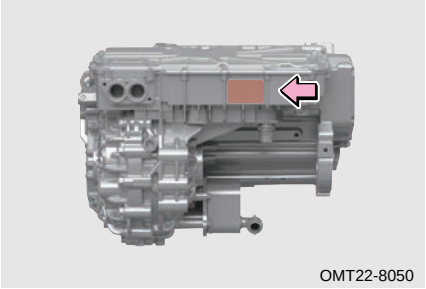
■ Engine number



OMT22-8020

Engine number is located on engine block as shown in the illustration.

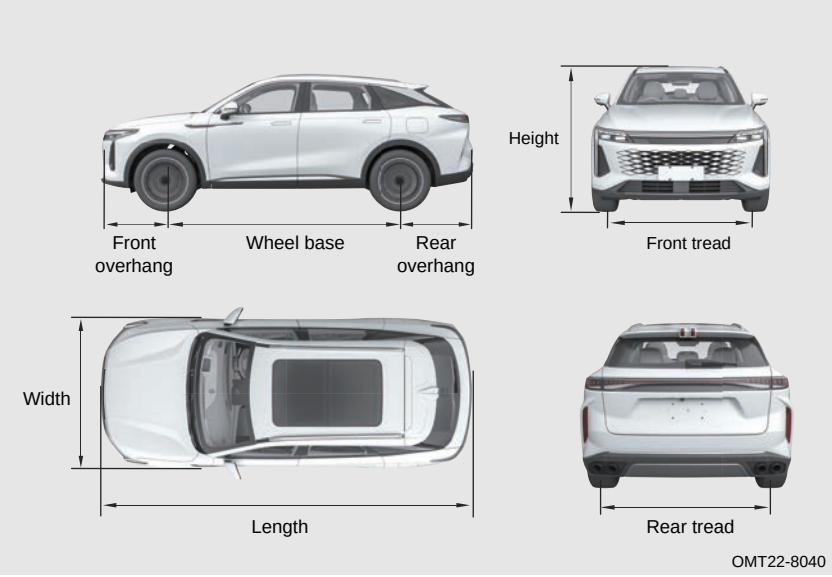
■ Rear Drive Motor number


OMT22-8050

Rear Drive Motor number is located as shown in the illustration.

8-2. Vehicle Specifications

Vehicle Dimensions



Overall Size	Length (mm)	4775
	Width (mm)	1920
	Height (mm)	1671
Wheel Base (mm)		2800
Tread	Front (mm)	940
	Rear (mm)	1035
Overhang	Front (mm)	1641
	Rear (mm)	1642

Vehicle Type

Vehicle Type	4 × 4 four-wheel drive, front-wheel steering, transverse front-engine, 2-compartment, 5-door, 5-seat, integral body, right-hand drive
Engine Model	SQRH4J15
Engine Type	Vertical, 4-cylinder in-line, watercooled, 4-stroke, double overhead camshaft, turbocharging, intercooler
Fuel Supply Type	Direct injection
Transmission Model	351HHB

Vehicle Weight

Vehicle Curb Weight (kg)		2195
Vehicle Curb Axle Weight	Front Axle (kg)	1167
	Rear Axle (kg)	1028
Manufacturer Maximum Total Weight (kg)		2609
Manufacturer Maximum Total Axle Weight	Front Axle (kg)	1206
	Rear Axle (kg)	1064
Seating Capacity (Including Driver) (Person)		5

⚠ WARNING

Please follow the vehicle load specified in the instruction manual and do not exceed the allowable total weight. Otherwise, the brake and handling performance of the vehicle may change and may cause an personal injury and accident.

Vehicle Performance

Passing Performance	Minimum Ground Clearance (mm)		152
	Minimum Turning Diameter (m)	Left Turn (m)	11.5
		Right Turn (m)	11.5
	Approach Angle (°)		19.5 / 19.3
	Departure Angle (°)		21.1 / 21.2
Power Performance	Maximum Vehicle Speed (km/h)		180
	Maximum Gradeability (%)		35

Engine Performance

Engine Mode	SQRH4J15
Cylinder Bore Diameter (mm)	72
Piston Stroke (mm)	92
Displacement (mL)	1499
Compression Ratio	14.5 : 1
Maximum Net Power (kW)	105
Maximum Net Power Speed (r/min)	5200
Maximum Net Torque (N•m)	215
Maximum Net Torque Speed (r/min)	2500 – 4000

Drive Motor

Model	TZ190XYCY1	KPTZ270YMXA0	KPTZ180YMXA0
Type	Permanent magnet synchronous motor	Permanent magnet synchronous motor	Permanent magnet synchronous motor
Cooling Method	Oil cooling	Oil cooling	Oil cooling
Rated Voltage (V)	350	345	345
Rated Power (kw)	69	45	50
Peek Power (kw)	175	75	90
Rated Torque (N·m)	118	120	110
Peak Torque (N·m)	310	170	220
Rated Speed (rpm)	5500	3581	4341
Peak Speed (rpm)	17200	6300	13000

Fuel System

Fuel Type*1	Unleaded gasoline with an octane number of 91 or higher
	Unleaded gasoline with an octane number of 92 or higher
	Unleaded gasoline with an octane number of 95 or higher (unleaded super gasoline)
	E22-E100
Fuel Tank Type	Plastic fuel tank
Fuel Tank Total Capacity	70 L
Fuel Pump	Electric fuel pump

*1: Please use the fuel recommended by authorized dealers.

READ

Vehicle with catalytic converters can only use unleaded gasoline. In order to avoid the accident of filling wrong fuel type, the fuel filler pipe adopts a neck-type fuel filler port design, and only the standard unleaded gasoline fuel gun can be used for fueling operation.

⚠ CAUTION

- Use only the fuel type we recommend.
- The use of off-specification gasoline may cause damage to the engine and such damage is not covered under warranty.
- Using leaded gasoline will cause three-way catalytic converter to lose its effectiveness and emission control system to function improperly.
- If you accidentally fill leaded gasoline to the oil tank and start the engine (-even if only a small amount is filled), it will cause permanent damage to the catalytic converter. Therefore, if you accidentally fill leaded gasoline, please go to authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

Suspension System

Front Suspension	Macpherson type independent suspension, unadjustable height, with anti-roll stabilizer bar, cone coiled spring, double adjustable shock absorber
Rear Suspension	Multi-link type independent suspension, unadjustable height, with anti-roll stabilizer bar, cone coiled spring, double adjustable shock absorber

Power Battery

Items	Parameter
Model	113ADS
Rated Voltage (V)	322.08
Rated Capacity (Ah)	107
Maximum Charge Power (kw)	148.3
Maximum Discharge Power (kw)	218.9
Cell Voltage (V)	3.66
Charging Operating Temperature Range of Battery System (℃)	-20~55
Discharging Operating Temperature Range of Battery System (℃)	-30~55
Drive Mode	AWD

Battery

Battery Model	AGM H3

Wheel Alignment

Front Wheel	Front Wheel Camber	－30′ ±45′
	Kingpin Caster Angle	6°21′ ±45′
	Kingpin Inclination Angle	12°52′ ±45′
	Front Wheel Toe-in	5′ ±5′ (one side)
Rear Wheel	Rear Wheel Camber	－70′ ±45′
	Rear Wheel Toe-in	6′ ±5′ (one side)

Wheels and Tires

Tire Model		245/50 R20
Rim Model		20 × 7 1/2J
Cold Tire Inflation Pressure (kPa) (Unladen)	Front Wheel	230
	Rear Wheel	230
Tightening Torque of Wheel bolts		M14:180 ± 18 N·m
Wheel dynamic balance requirements for vehicle with a maximum design speed of more than 100 km/h		Allowable residual balanced mass: Clamp balance block side ⩽ 8 g, paste balance block side ⩽ 10 g

READ

The tire inflation pressures listed in the table apply to cold tires. The pressure increases slightly when the tire is heated, but it is unnecessary to lower the pressure.

CAUTION

- Tire inflation pressure should be checked at least once a month, and tire pressure is especially important at high speeds.
- In order to facilitate you to find the specified value for inflation pressure, there is adhesive sticker label on the driver doorsill, which is marked with the specified value for cold tire inflation pressure.

Light Bulb Specification

Light Bulb Name	Nominal Light Source (Type/Model)	Replacement Advice
Headlights	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Front Fog Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Rear Fog Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Daytime Running Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Front Position Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Rear Position Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Brake Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
High Mounted Stop Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Back-up Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Front Turn Signal Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Side Turn Signal Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
Rear Turn Signal Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station
License Plate Light	LED	Replaced by authorized service station

Note: The light bulb specifications are for reference only. Please refer to the actual vehicle configuration.

Vehicle Components That Are Not Included in the Vehicle Size

Components not included in vehicle length size

The following devices do not have laden function and their sizes are not more than 50 mm beyond the vehicle front end or rear end, and fillet radius of edge and corner is no less than 5 mm:

— Wiper and washer

— Outer identification, including registered trademark, manufacturer name, origin, model name and type, engine emission, transmission type, driving type and other distinguishing identification of the vehicle

— Lights and light signal device

— Anti-collision rubber block and equivalent

— External sunshade device

— Customs sealing device and its protective device

— Device used to fixed raincloth and its protective device

— Locking device, hinge, handle, controller, switch

— Step plate (or ladder), vehicle climbing step plate and handle on top of bumper used for cleaning windows.

— Rear emblem plate with LOGO

— Removable trailer or towing device

— Exhaust tail pipe

Components not included in the vehicle width measurements:

— Indirect view device

— School bus stop plate in inoperative state

The following devices do not have laden function and their one side size exceeds the side of vehicle for no more than 50 mm, and fillet radius of edge and corner is no less than 5 mm:

— Outer identification, including registered trademark, manufacturer name, origin, model name and type, engine emission, transmission type, driving type and other distinguishing identification of the vehicle

— Lights and light signal device

— Anti-collision rubber block and equivalent

— Customs sealing device and its protective device

— Device used to fixed raincloth and its protective device

— Local water drain slot: Refers to the water drain slot used to guide rain flow above driver door (or window) and passenger door, both sides of front windshield

— Flexible protruding part of splash proof system

— Retractable step plate, entering/exiting slope of bus, lifting platform and equivalent that is in the retract state

— Locking device, hinge, handle, controller, switch

— Tire failure signal device

— Tire pressure indicator

— Deformed part of tire wall directly above contact point between tire and ground

— Reversing assistance device

— Exhaust tail pipe

Components not included in the vehicle height measurements:

Soft part of antenna

Device without laden function:

— Intake duct

— Indirect view device

— Current collecting device of electric vehicle (including its fixing device)

— Vehicle rear air guide device is removable or folding, and its deployed and retracted length is no more than 2,000 mm and 200 mm respectively.

— Tailboard, entering/exiting slope and equivalent with a horizontal length not exceeding 300 mm in retract state

— Tail ladder

A

Active Speed Limit 177
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) System 172
Adjusting Head Restraint 56
Adjusting Steering Wheel 36
After Starting Engine 15
Air Outlets Airflow Control 113
Airbag 161
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) ... 219
Audio Headrest (If Equipped) 56
Authorized Service Station is at Your Service 276
Auto Hold 158
Auto Parking Function (If Equipped) 207
Automatic Air Conditioning System 105
Automatic Emergency Braking System (AEB) and Front Collision Warning System (FCW) 190
Automatic Transmission 147

B

Battery 311
Before Starting Engine 14, 144
Blind Spot Detection (BSD) / Lane Change Assist (LCA) System 185
Brake System Operation Descriptions 160

C

Camera Layout 212
Checking Fuse 260
Child Restraint Systems 64
Cybersecurity Notice for Scrapping or Resale 23
Cybersecurity Support Service Update or Termination Notice 23

D

Delivery Card 5
Delivery Inspection Certificate 11
Door Lock Switch 84
Door Open Warning System 186
Drive Away Information System . 195
Drive Motor 309
Driver Monitoring System (DMS) 204
Driving Mode 150
Driving on Road Covered with Ice and Snow 21
Driving Through Water 19

E

ECALL (If Equipped) 252
Electric Parking Brake (EPB) System 156
Electronic Stability Program System (ESP) 217
Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) System 183
Engine Performance 308
Exhaust System Inspection 17
External Lighting 44

F

"Face to face" Consultative Service Card 7
First Maintenance Information ... 291
Foot Brake 159
Fragrance System 114
Front Seat 50
Fuel System 310
Fuse 258
Fuse and Relay Box Layout 259

H

Hazard Light 252
Head Unit View 95
Horn 36
How to Read This Manual 2
How to Save Fuel and Extend Life of Vehicle 13

I

Impact on Mileage 265
Index 2
Inside Rear View Mirror 37
Installing Child Restraint Systems 68
Installing Towing Eyelet 268
Instrument cluster view 26
Integrated Braking Force Control System (If Equipped) ... 217
Intelligent Timely All-wheel-drive System 149
Internal Lighting 48

J

Jump-starting 270

K

Keyless Entry 77

L

Lane Departure Prevention (LDP) System 181
Lane Departure Warning (LDW) System 180
Light Bulb Specification 313

M

Maintenance Schedule 292
Mechanical Key 75
Mechanical Switch 272

N

New Vehicle Break-in 12
New Vehicle Inspection 11
Normal Maintenance 278

O

Off-road Driving 18
Operation/Malfunction Indicator ... 28
OTA Upgrade 92
Outside Rear View Mirror 37

P

Parking on Slope 16
Parking Operations 15
Parking Radar System 205
Passenger Assist Grips 132
Phone-link(If Equipped) 101
Pictorial Index 2
Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicle System (PHEV) 222
Power Back Door 137
Power Battery 223, 311
Power Windows 86

R

Rear Collision Warning System .. 188
Rear Seat 55
Rear Traffic Crossing Anti-collision System 186
Reflective Vest 253
Remote Starting for Smart Key 81
Removing Battery 269
Repair and Maintenance 276
Repairing Tire in Emergency 254

S

Safety Chain 264
Safety Check 14, 277
Seat Belt Pretensioner (If Equipped) 61
Spare Tools 254
Starting and Turning off Engine in Emergency 145
Suspension System 311
Symbols in the Manual 3

T

Table of Contents.....2
Technical Data 300
Tire Chains 21
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 201
Top Tether 66
Tow truck Brake..... 265
Towing Hint..... 265
Towing Hook 263
Towing Light..... 265
Towing 261
Traffic Jam Assist (TJA) System and Integrated Cruise Assist (ICA) System..... 193

U

User Registration Certificate.....4

V

Vehicle Arming 82
Vehicle Components That Are Not Included in the Vehicle Size 313
Vehicle Dimensions..... 306
Vehicle Performance 308
Vehicle Power-on..... 144
Vehicle Type 307
Vehicle Weight 307

W

Weight Limit..... 262
Wheel Alignment 312
Wheels and Tires..... 312
When Driving 15
When Driving on Slippery Road Surfaces.....19
Window Jam Protection Function . 89
Winter Driving Tips.....20
Wiper Combination Switch 41

Emergency Response Guide

1-1. RESCUE INFORMATION

Rescue Card Information.....2

Vehicle Basic Information 3

Safety Sign Information.....4

Disconnecting 12 V Battery....6

High Voltage Power Release Method.....6

Disconnecting Charging Gun.....6

1-2. EMERGENCY HANDLING PROCEDURE INFORMATION

Parking Operations.....7

Vehicle Power-off 7

Back Door Emergency Opening.....8

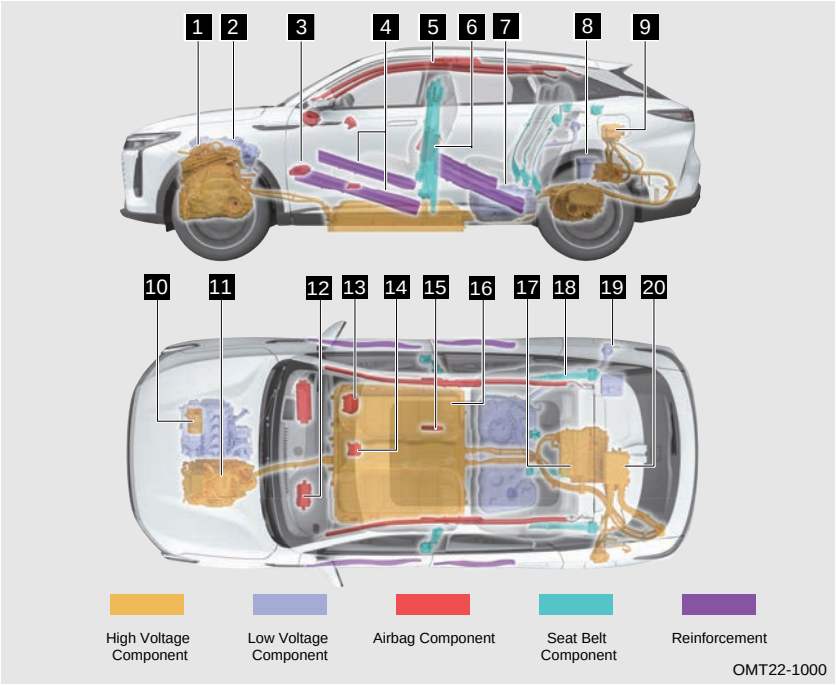
Protection Device Required for Rescuer.....8

Emergency Rescue 9

Towing Vehicle..... 12

1-1. RESCUE INFORMATION

Rescue Card Information



1 High Voltage Electric Heater
2 Engine Assembly
3 Driver Knee Airbag (If Equipped)
4 Door Anti-collision Panel
5 Curtain Side Airbag
6 Front Seat Belt
7 Fuel Tank
8 12 V Battery
9 Charging Port
10 Electric Compressor Assembly
11 Hybrid Transmission Assembly
12 Front Passenger Airbag
13 Driver Airbag
14 Airbag Module
15 Front Seat Center Airbag (If Equipped)
16 Power Battery
17 Rear Drive Motor (If Equipped)
18 Rear Seat Belt
19 Fuel Filler
20 On-board Charger Assembly

⚠ WARNING

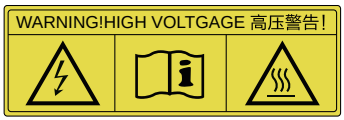
- In case of traffic accident, do not touch high voltage component and high voltage wire harness in the illustration to avoid serious injury or even death.
- When cutting the vehicle for rescue, avoid the components in the illustration and the rescuer must wear basic rescue protective device. Select high voltage rescue protective device or fire rescue protective device according to the site situation. Failure to follow the instructions may cause personal injury or even death.

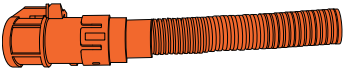
Vehicle Basic Information

Overall Size	Length (mm)	4775
	Width (mm)	1920
	Height (mm)	1671
Wheel Base (mm)		2800
Manufacturer Maximum Total Weight (kg)		2609
Seating Capacity (-Including Driver) (Person)		5

Battery cells	Type	Lithium ion battery
	Monomer nominal voltage (V)	3.66
Power battery assembly	Battery pack rated capacity (Ah)	107
	Battery pack nominal voltage (V)	322.08
	Number of battery pack (pieces)	1
Fuel tank capacity (L)	70	

Safety Sign Information

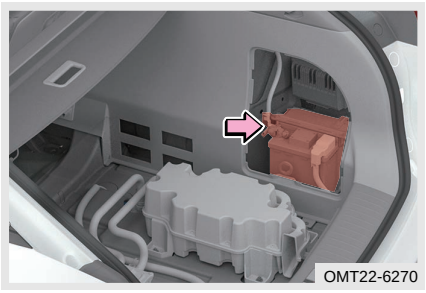
Warning Sign Name	Warning Sign Pattern	Warning Sign Description
High Voltage Warning Sign 1		Never touch high voltage system components. Never depress! Danger!
High Voltage Warning Sign 2		High voltage system components, be careful, Danger! Never touch high voltage system components without wearing protection device, beware of electric shock!
High Voltage Warning Sign 3		High voltage system components, be careful, Danger! Never touch high voltage system components without wearing protection device, beware of electric shock and high temperature scald!
High Voltage Warning Sign 4		High voltage system components, be careful, Danger! Never touch high voltage system components without wearing protection device, beware of electric shock and high temperature scald!
High Voltage Warning Sign 5		High voltage system components, be careful, Danger! Never touch high voltage system components without wearing protection device, beware of electric shock and high temperature scald!

High Voltage Warning Sign 6		High voltage system components, be careful, Danger! Never touch high voltage system components without wearing protection device, beware of electric shock and high temperature scald!
High Voltage Wire Harness Sign		Vehicle high voltage system components are connected by orange high voltage wire harness. Never touch high voltage system components without wearing protection device!
Power Battery Pack Warning Sign		Usage precautions for power battery pack!

⚠ WARNING

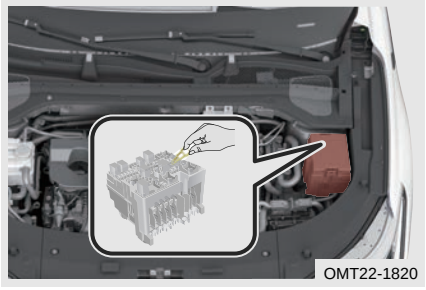
- After vehicle is started, power system will be hot. Be careful of high voltage and high temperature, and always follow the instructions on the vehicle safety warning signs.
- Never touch, remove or replace parts with high voltage warning marks, orange cables and connectors on vehicle to prevent high voltage electric shock.
- Not every high voltage component is labeled. Rescuer must wear basic rescue protective device when cutting a vehicle. Select high voltage rescue protective device or fire protective device according to the site situation. Failure to follow the instructions may cause personal injury or even death.

Disconnecting 12 V Battery


OMT22-6270

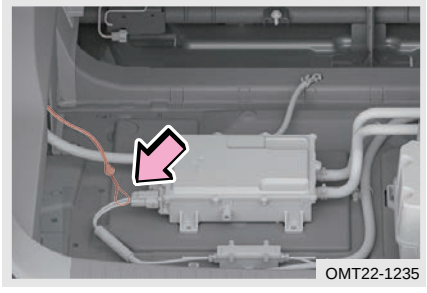
1. Power off the vehicle;
2. Open the back door, and remove the right protector;
3. Disconnect the negative battery cable.

High Voltage Power Release Method


OMT22-1820

1. Power off the vehicle;
2. Disconnect the negative battery cable;
3. Remove front compartment fuse box cover, refer to fuse location diagram on fuse box cover, pull BMS fuse out by a fuse remover and disconnect the BMS module power.

Disconnecting Charging Gun


OMT22-1235

If charging gun cannot be unplugged from AC charging port by pressing and holding the upper button of charging gun, it can be released manually by using the cable.

1. Make sure that the vehicle is not charged at present according to charging information displayed on instrument cluster;
2. Open the back door and lift the luggage compartment carpet;
3. Pull charging gun release cable to release charging gun manually.

1-2. EMERGENCY HANDLING PROCEDURE INFORMATION

Parking Operations

OMT22-3050

Depress brake pedal, and park the vehicle smoothly. Press P button to shift the gear position to P, "Ⓟ" red indicator on instrument cluster remains on, indicating that parking function is activated.

Vehicle Power-off

Normal power-off

With vehicle in READY and gear position in P, the driver door is opened, the driver gets up and leaves the driver seat, "READY" indicator on instrument cluster goes off, the vehicle exits "ready to drive" state.

With the vehicle power-on or in READY, if the driver seat is not occupied, all four doors are closed, and gear position is in P, the following operations will power off the vehicle:

- Lock and power off the vehicle with NFC card key (if equipped).
- Lock and power off the vehicle with smart key.

Power-off switch

When the vehicle is in a stationary state for a long time, perform power-off through the power-off switch in the head unit display to reduce the loss of vehicle energy consumption.

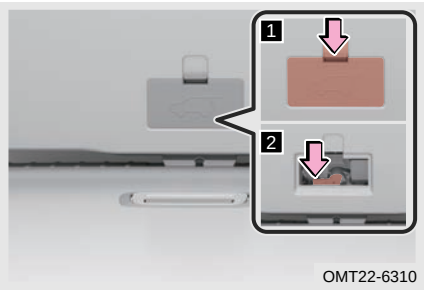
OMT22-3020

When the vehicle is in a stationary state and the shift position is in P/N, press the power-off switch and confirm to turn off power supply of the vehicle according to the hints on head unit, the vehicle is powered off.

Automatic power-off

With vehicle powered on, driver seat not occupied, four doors closed, and gear position in P, the vehicle is powered off automatically after parking for about 90 minutes.

Back Door Emergency Opening



1 Get in the rear of vehicle and open emergency device cover;

2 Press the emergency device switch with hand, release it, and then push the back door to open it.

Protection Device Required for Rescuer

Basic Rescue Protection Device:

1 High Resistance Safety Work Shoes

2 Cotton Gloves

3 Protective Gloves

High Voltage Rescue Protection Device:

4 High Voltage Power Specialist Protective Clothing

5 Rubber Sheet

6 Safety Helmet with Goggles

Fire Rescue Protection Device:

7 Compressed Air Breathing Mask

8 Thermal Imaging Camera

> ⚠ WARNING
>
> Rescuer must wear basic rescue protective device. Select high voltage rescue protective device or fire rescue protective device according to the site situation. Failure to follow the instructions may cause personal injury or even death.

Emergency Rescue

> ⚠ WARNING
>
> When the vehicle needs emergency rescue, be sure to inform the rescuer that the vehicle is equipped with power battery, and please transfer the rescue information manual to rescuer.

How to avoid water intrusion into high voltage components

1. When a vehicle is flooded, first pull the vehicle out of the water and then cut off the high voltage power supply to avoid greater electric shock hazard due to vehicle immersion.
2. When washing the vehicle, avoid washing the charging port cover switch area with a high pressure water gun, otherwise it may cause the charging port cover to open and cause water to enter the charging port end.
3. Do not charge when there are obvious water stains in the charging port to avoid damage to the vehicle or charging device; When charging the vehicle, do not wash the charging port area to avoid damage to the vehicle or charging device.
4. Do not wipe the door protective panel with wet tissue, wet cloth, detergent etc. Pay attention to protection during the use of vehicle (such as on rainy days, washing vehicle) and try to avoid water intrusion into the door protective panel, otherwise it may cause internal electrical component fault etc.
5. Try to choose a place with a shelter for charging in the severe convective weather; If the vehicle is soaked in water or wading level is above the doorsill position, it may cause water to enter into the high pressure components. It is necessary to contact authorized service station for proper test and treatment in time; Never drive on a road when water exceeds half of the tires.
6. Try not to drive on a road with unknown depth of water to avoid leakage accidents or damage to high voltage electrical components; If wading is necessary, analyze the road condition and confirm the depth of water before driving, and the water depth should not be higher than the bottom of the body; It is recommended not to stay in deep water for a long time during wading, otherwise vehicle high voltage components may be damaged.

Driving in wade

■ When vehicle drives in wade:

1. If you cannot drive the vehicle away from the waterlogged area, please cut off power supply immediately.
2. When driving in wade, do not stop the vehicle and keep driving at low speed (vehicle speed cannot exceed 10 km/h).
3. Drive the vehicle away from the waterlogged area and park it in a safe area. Check if there is any water in the vehicle, and clean it if there is.

■ After vehicle drives in wade:

1. If the vehicle is severely flooded, all persons in the vehicle must evacuate to a safe area immediately.
2. After the vehicle drives in wade, slightly depress the brake pedal several times to remove any residual water from the brake disc and ensure that the brake system can work properly.
3. Go to authorized service station for routine inspection as soon as possible, as water may enter into components of the drive train system and dilute the grease, causing system malfunction when vehicle drives in wade.

Fire prevention

■ In order to prevent vehicle fires effectively, pay attention to the following precautions during usage:

1. Do not leave flammable and explosive materials in the vehicle.

In hot summer, the internal temperature of the vehicle parked in the sun can reach more than 70℃. If lighters, cleaner, perfume and other flammable and explosive materials are left in the vehicle, it is very easy to cause fire or even explosion.

2. After smoking, make sure that the cigarette butt is completely extinguished.

Smoking is not only harmful to health, but also may cause fires. If the cigarette butt is not completely extinguished, it may cause a fire.

3. It is recommended to regularly go to authorized service station for inspection.

Check the engine compartment for oil leakage regularly and clean any oil stain or oil on the engine in time.

Check regularly if vehicle circuits, electrical appliances and wire harness connectors, insulation and fixing position are normal. If any problem is found, handle it in time.

4. Do not modify vehicle circuits or add electrical components.

   a. It is strictly prohibited to use fuses or other metal wires that exceed the rated specifications of electrical appliances to replace fuses.

b. Installation of other electrical appliances (such as high power audio and light) can cause excessive load on circuits, and wire harness is prone to heating, causing fires. Improper modification of electrical appliances and circuits can create contact resistance and abnormal heating, causing fires.

5. Precautions for driving.

When parking the vehicle, especially in summer, it is important to check underneath for flammable substances, such as hay, dead branches and leaves, or wheat straw. If there are flammable substances under the vehicle, it is very likely to cause fires. When driving, the vehicle should also avoid roads covered with flammable materials such as dry leaves, wheat straw and weed etc. as much as possible, or stop vehicle in time to check underneath for flammable materials after passing through such roads. When parking, try to avoid areas exposed to sunlight as much as possible.

6. Always leave portable fire extinguishers in the vehicle and master the usage methods.

To ensure vehicle safety, fire extinguishers should be equipped in the vehicle and regularly inspected and replaced; At the same time, it is important to be familiar with the usage of fire extinguishers and be prepared to avoid being helpless in case of accidents.

7. When repairing or maintaining a vehicle, it is necessary to disconnect the 12 V battery power after the vehicle high voltage power is cut off.

Fire treatment

■ If the vehicle is on fire, take effective measures promptly and calmly to minimize losses:

1. After the accident occurs, contact the insurance company for post-treatment in time.
2. After the fire department extinguishes the fire, ask for a police certificate and a statement of the fire cause.
3. Generally, a fire has early warning signs (such as abnormal noise or odor from body). Once abnormal conditions are found, stop the vehicle and power off in time, and carry out active rescue according to the actual situation.
4. If smoke is found in the front compartment, do not open the front compartment cover immediately (As doing so will intensify the combustion and spread of the fire due to a large amount of air. Because the combustion material in the front compartment is limited, closing the front compartment cover can control the slow burning of the fire, which is conducive to extinguishing it).
5. If fire occurs, leave the dangerous area immediately and call the fire telephone. Be sure to inform the rescuers that this is a hybrid vehicle, and deliver the onboard rescue information manual to the rescuers.

⚠ WARNING
When fire occurs, never touch any part of vehicle directly. Keep away from the vehicle and wait for professional rescuers wearing appropriate protective device to operate it.

Power battery leakage

If power battery leaks, leave the dangerous area immediately and call the fire telephone. Be sure to inform the rescuers that this is a hybrid vehicle, and deliver the onboard rescue information manual to the rescuers.

⚠ WARNING
High voltage battery liquid leakage caused by collision can only be operated by professional rescuers who wear protective mask and solvent-isolation gloves. Do not touch liquid directly.

Vehicle cutting area

Vehicle pillar uses cast aluminum alloy to protect personal safety. If it is necessary to cut during rescue, proper tools should be used. It is forbidden to cut the high temperature and high voltage areas of the vehicle.

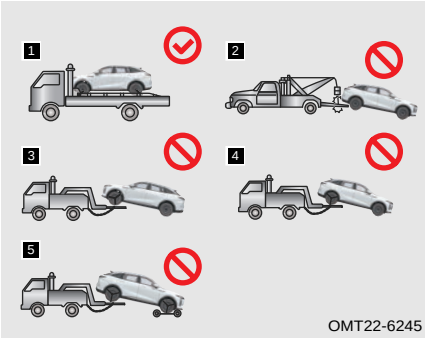
⚠ WARNING
When cutting the vehicle, professional rescuers must use appropriate tools such as hydraulic cutter etc. and wear appropriate personal protective device to avoid serious personal injuries.

Towing Vehicle

If the vehicle needs to be towed, it is recommended to contact authorized service station or professional towing services department, or ask for help from the roadside rescue service organization you have joined.

⚠ WARNING
• Damage caused by transportation is not covered by the warranty. • To transport the vehicle, follow the instructions below strictly. • Do not tow your vehicle only with ropes or chains by other vehicles.

Using platform trailer



Please use **1** platform rescue vehicle to load your vehicle.

Vehicle towing precautions are as follow:

- Tow with four wheels off ground. Do not use the rescue method **2** **3** **4** **5** shown in the figure.
- Before towing, shift the gear position to N, turn on hazard light, and close the doors.
- During towing, nobody is allowed to seat in the accident vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION
Do not move the vehicle with forklift when vehicle is broken down.

⚠ WARNING
• No person or object is allowed behind the trailer when the vehicle is pulled onto the platform rescue vehicle, otherwise it may cause personal injury or death. • The vehicle can only be towed away from the site if there is no safety risk. If the vehicle power battery pack has deformation, leakage, smoke, etc., the safety risk should be solved first.